HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 3008

PEUGEOT

On-line user guide

You can find your user guide on the PEUGEOT website, under the heading "Personal space".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Referring to the user guide on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmarks, associated with this pictogram:



Please note the following point:
The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system. Please note this specific warning. It is advisable to contact a PEUGEOT dealer to be shown the recommended equipment and accessories.

If the heading "Personal space" is not available on the public website for your country, you can find your user guide at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com

Select:
- the link in "Private customer access",
- the language,
- the model,
- the edition date appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

You will find your user guide, presented in the same way as the paper version.

Thank you for choosing a 3008, a symbol of confidence, passion and inspiration.

This handbook has been designed to enable you to make the most of your 3008.

On the first few pages, you will find a detailed summary, followed by a quick reference guide intended to make it easier for you to become familiar with your vehicle.

All of the details specific to your 3008, comfort, safety, driving, are then presented in this handbook, to increase your appreciation of the vehicle and help you make the most of it.



At the end of the handbook, illustrations of the interior and exterior of the vehicle will assist you in locating equipment or a function by means of the page indexed.

Each model may only be fitted with some of the equipment mentioned in this handbook, depending on the trim level, model, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

Key

Warning:

this symbol marks warnings which it is essential to observe for your own safety, for the safety of others or to avoid any risk of damaging your vehicle.

Information:

this symbol draws your attention to additional information for better use of your vehicle.

Protection of the environment:

this symbol accompanies advice relating to protection of the environment.

Page reference:

this symbol invites you to refer to the pages which provide details of the function.

CONTENTS

FAMILIARISATION 4-26

ECO-DRIVING 25

1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS 27-41

Instrument panels 27
Indicator and warning lamps 29
Indicators 37
Adjustment buttons 41

2 MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS 42-55

Screen A without audio equipment 42
Screen A with audio equipment 44
Screen C (Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5)) 46
16/9 retractable colour screen (Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6) or Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)) 49
Trip computer 52

3 COMFORT 56-71

Heating and Ventilation 56
Manual air conditioning 58
Rear screen demist - defrost 59
Dual-zone digital air conditioning 60
Front seats 63
Rear seats 67
Mirrors 69
Steering wheel adjustment 71

4 ACCESS 72-86

Remote control key 72
Alarm 77
Electric windows 79
Doors 81
Boot 83
Lower tailgate 84
Fuel tank 85
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 86

5 VISIBILITY 87-98

Lighting controls 87
LED lamps 89
Automatic illumination of headlamps 90
Headlamp adjustment 91
Directional lighting 92
Wiper controls 93
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 95
Courtesy lamps 96
Interior mood lighting 97

6 FITTINGS 99-111

Interior fittings 99
Front armrest 101
Rear multimedia 103
Panoramic sunroof 105
Boot fittings 106

7 CHILD SAFETY 112-123

Child seats 112
ISOFIX child seats 120
Child lock 123

8 SAFETY 124-136

Direction indicators 124
Hazard warning lamps 124
Horn 124
Tyre under-inflation detection 125
ESC system 126
Grip control 128
Front seat belts 130
Airbags 133

CONTENTS

9 DRIVING 137-165

Electric parking brake 137
Hill start assist 142
Head-up display 145
Distance alert 147
Speed limiter 149
Cruise control 151
Manual gearbox 153
Gear shift indicator 153
6-speed electronic gear control gearbox 154
Automatic gearbox 158
Stop & Start 161
Parking sensors 164

10 CHECKS 166-174

Bonnet 167
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 168
Petrol engines 169
Diesel engines 170
Checking levels 171
Checks 173

11 PRACTICAL INFORMATION 175-206

Temporary puncture repair kit 175
Changing a wheel 181
Changing a bulb 186
Changing a fuse 191
12 V battery 198
Energy economy mode 201
Changing a wiper blade 202
Towing the vehicle 202
Towing a trailer 204
Fitting roof bars 205
Very cold climate screen 205
Accessories 206

12 TECHNICAL DATA 207-214

Petrol engines 207
Petrol weights 208
Diesel engines 209
Diesel weights 210
Dimensions 212
Identification markings 213

AUDIO EQUIPMENT and TELEMATICS 215-336

Emergency or assistance 215
Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) 219
Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6) 263
Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) 317

ALPHABETICAL INDEX 337-341

VISUAL SEARCH 342-348

EXTERIOR

Welcome lighting

This additional exterior and interior lighting, controlled remotely, makes your approach to the vehicle easier when the light is poor.

89

Stop & Start

This system puts the engine temporarily into standby during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc....). The engine restarts automatically as soon as you want to move off. The Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and provides the comfort of complete silence when stationary.

161

Directional lighting

This lighting automatically provides additional visibility when cornering.

92

Panoramic sunroof

This roof provides incomparable visibility and light in the passenger compartment.

105



Grip control

This special traction control system improves the traction of 2 wheel drive vehicles in snow, mud and sand.

128

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit is a complete system, consisting of a compressor and an integral sealant cartridge, for the temporary repair of a tyre.

175

When using an automatic car wash:

- unscrew the aerial,
- fold back the mirrors.





Lower tailgate

This lower tailgate permits remarkable accessibility and makes the loading of bulky objects easier.

84

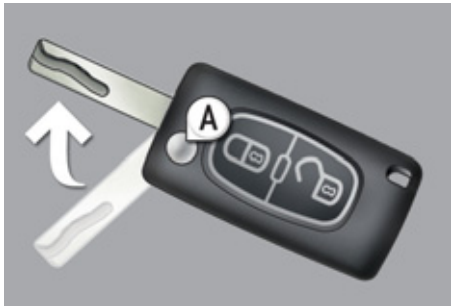
Visual and audible front and/or rear parking sensors

This system warns you if an obstacle is detected behind or in front of the vehicle in reverse or forward gear.

164

ACCESS

Remote control key



A. Unfolding / Folding the key.

Normal locking
(press once; fixed lighting of the direction indicators).

or

Deadlocking the vehicle
(press twice in succession; fixed lighting of the direction indicators).

Complete or selective unlocking of the vehicle
(rapid flashing of the direction indicators).

72

Welcome lighting

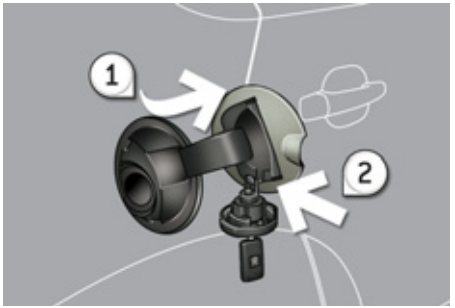


When the light is poor, detected by a sensor, the remote switching on of the dipped headlamps and sidelamps makes your approach to the vehicle easier.

This function can be programmed via the configuration menu.

89

Fuel tank



1. Opening the fuel filler flap.
2. Opening and hooking the fuel filler cap.

The type of fuel to be used is indicated on the inner face of the fuel filler flap.

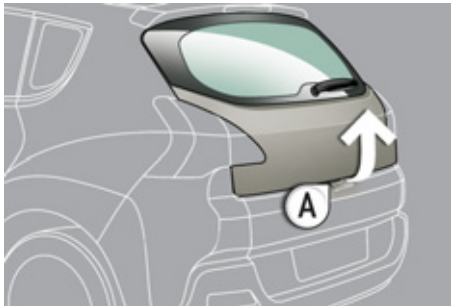
Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

85

On Diesel vehicles, the fuel filler neck incorporates a mis-fuel prevention device which prevents filling with petrol.

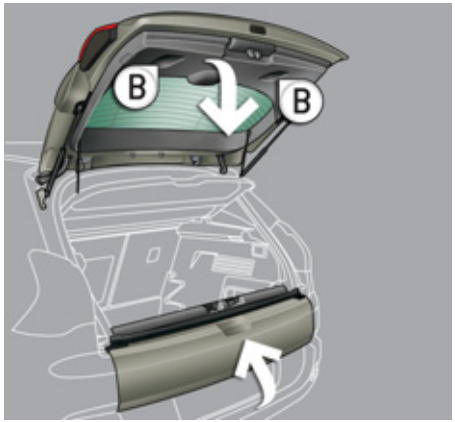
ACCESS

Boot



Opening

☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, press the handle **A** and lift the tailgate.

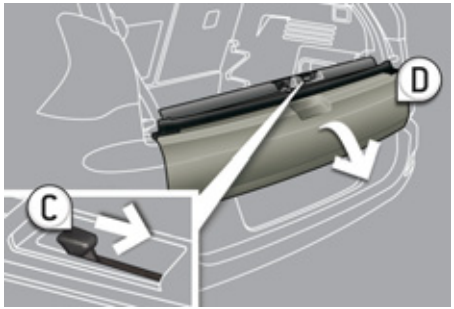


Closing

☞ After closing the lower tailgate, pull the handle **B** downwards to guide the tailgate.

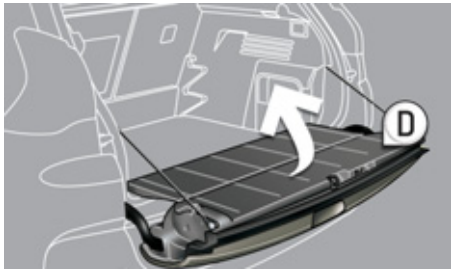
83

Lower tailgate



Opening

☞ Push the handle **C** to the right and tilt the tailgate **D**.



Closing

☞ Raise the tailgate **D**, push it fully to close it, check that it is locked correctly.

84

INTERIOR

Electric parking brake

This combines the functions of **automatic application** on switching off the engine and **automatic release** on acceleration.

Manual application/release is possible.

137

Head-up display

This system projects certain information into the field of vision of the driver: speed, cruise control/speed limiter and Distance alert.

145



Audio and communication systems

These systems benefit from the latest technology: MP3 compatible Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5), Peugeot Connect USB, Bluetooth, Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) or Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6) with 16/9 retractable colour screen, JBL audio system, auxiliary sockets.

Dual-zone digital air conditioning

This systems allows different levels of comfort to be set for the driver and front passenger. It then controls these level automatically according to the ambient conditions.

60

Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) 219

Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6) 263

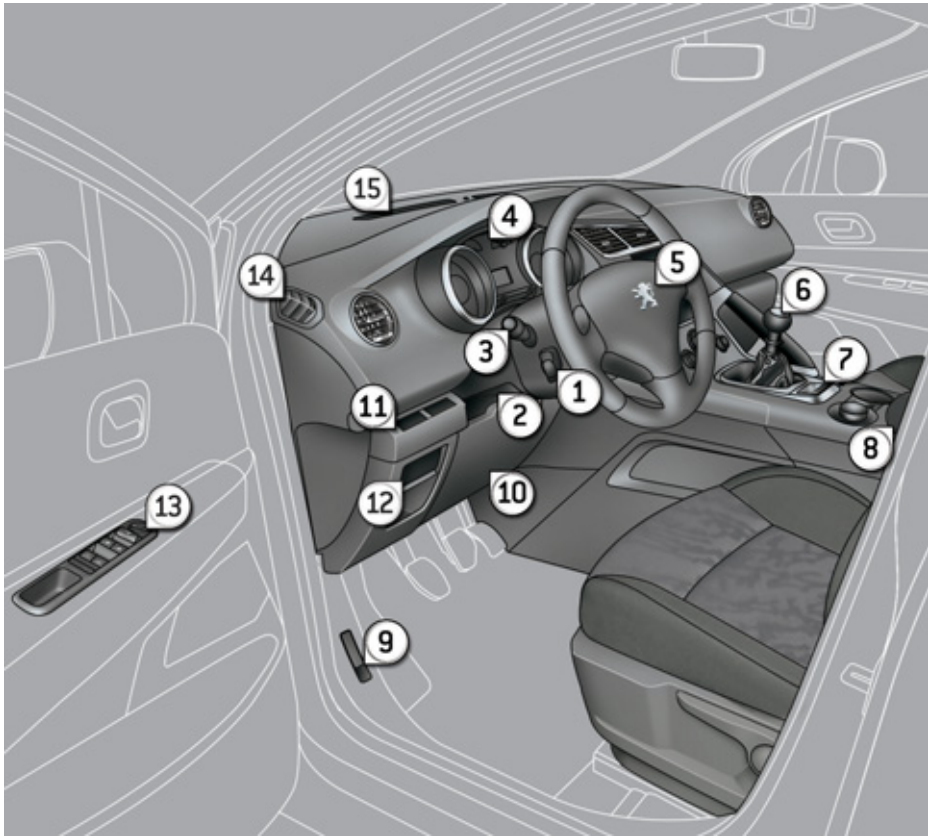
Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) 317

Peugeot Connect USB 242, 298, 324

Bluetooth 247, 285, 327

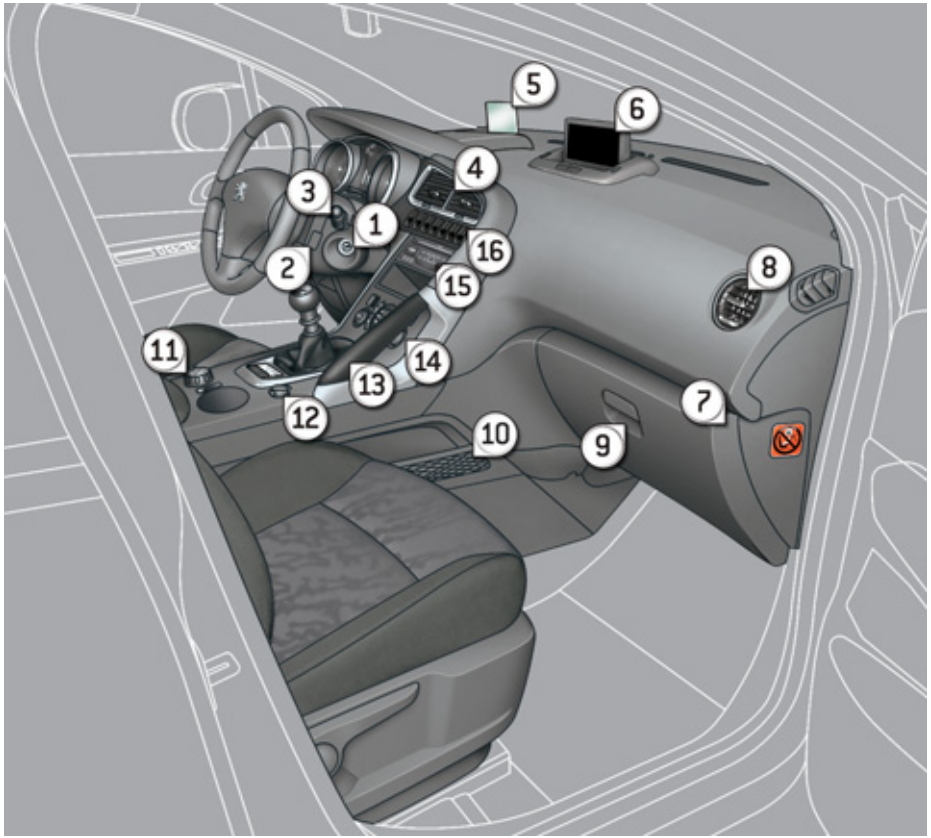
PEUGEOT Assistance 216

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Cruise control / speed limiter switches.
2. Steering wheel adjustment control.
3. Lighting and direction indicator control stalk.
4. Instrument panel.
5. Driver's airbag.
   Horn.
6. Gear lever.
7. Electric parking brake.
8. Front armrest - Peugeot Connect USB and/or auxiliary socket.
9. Bonnet release.
10. Driver's storage compartment (Handbook).
11. Alarm button.
    Parking sensors button.
    Dynamic stability control button (ESC/ASR).
    Stop & Start deactivation button.
12. Manual headlamp adjustment.
13. Door mirror controls.
    Electric window controls.
    Child lock.
14. Front side window demisting vent.
15. Windscreen demisting vent.

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Steering lock and ignition.
2. Audio and telematics system steering mounted control.
3. Wipers / screenwash / trip computer control stalk.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Head-up display.
6. Multifunction screen.
7. Deactivation of the passenger's airbag.
8. Side adjustable air vent.
9. Glove box - Audio/video sockets.
10. Storage compartment with net.
11. Grip control switch.
12. 12V accessory socket.
13. Grab handle.
14. Heating / air conditioning controls.
15. Audio and telematics system.
16. Buttons:
    - head-up display,
    - hazard warning lamps,
    - Distance alert,
    - central locking.

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Driver's seat

Forwards-backwards



Height



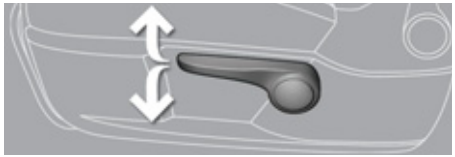
Seat back angle



Manual adjustment

63





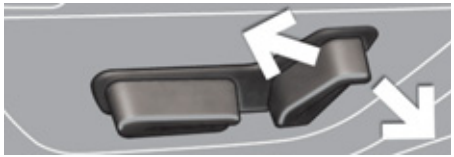


Electric adjustment

64



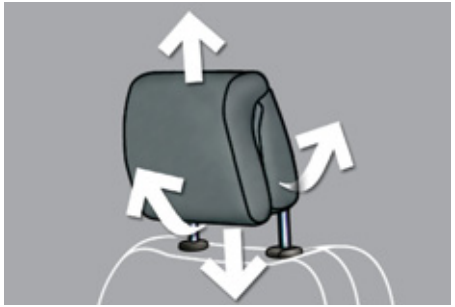




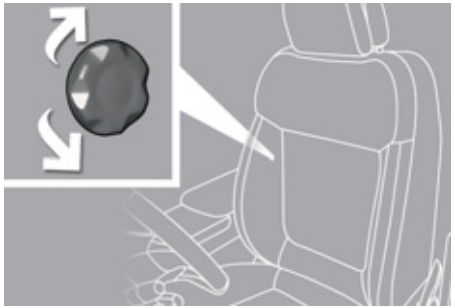
SITTING COMFORTABLY

Front seats

Head restraint height and angle

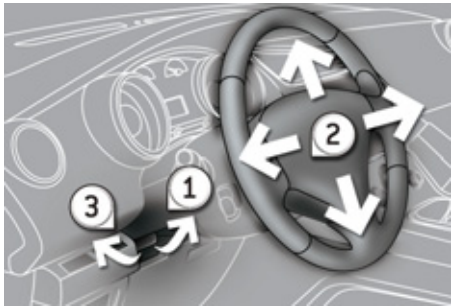


Lumbar



65

Steering wheel adjustment

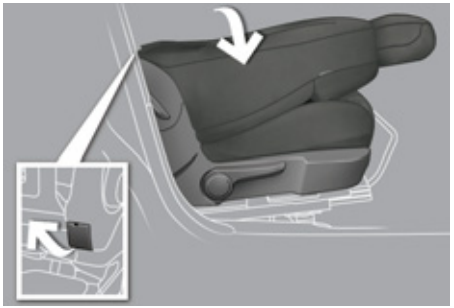


1. Release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust for height and reach.
3. Lock the steering wheel.

As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out when stationary.

71

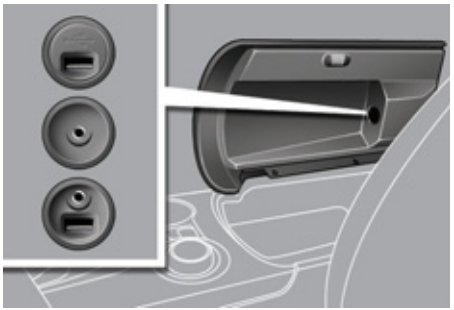
Table position (front passenger seat)



To place objects on the table or to make the loading of long objects in the vehicle easier.

66

Front armrest

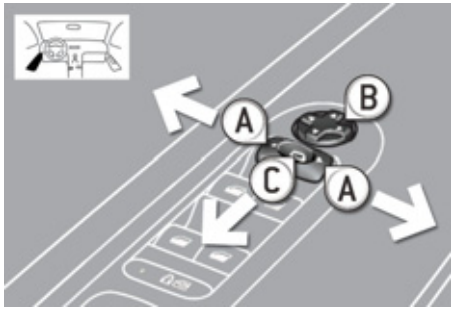


This incorporates the Peugeot Connect USB and/or a JACK auxiliary socket.

101

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Door mirrors



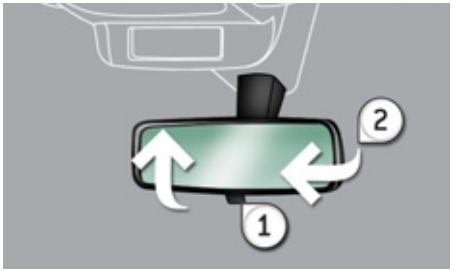
Adjustment

A. Selection of the mirror to be adjusted.
B. Adjustment of the position of the mirror in the four directions.

69

Also...
C. Folding / Unfolding.

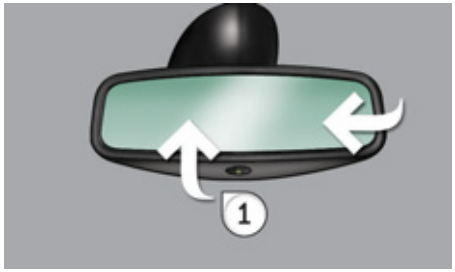
Rear view mirror



Manual model

1. Selection of the "day" position of the mirror.
2. Adjustment of the mirror.

70

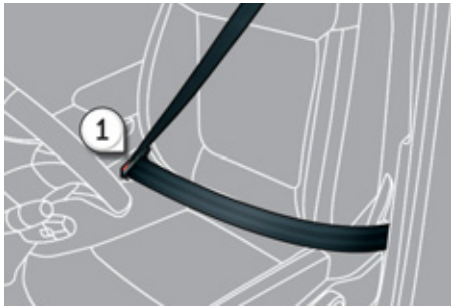


Automatic day/night model

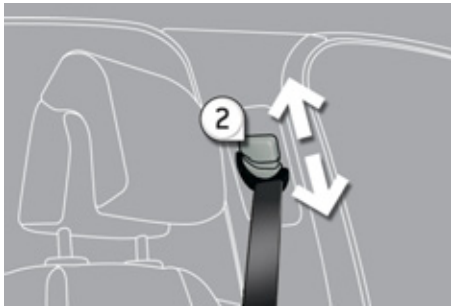
1. Adjustment of the mirror.

70

Front seat belts



1. Fastening of the buckle.

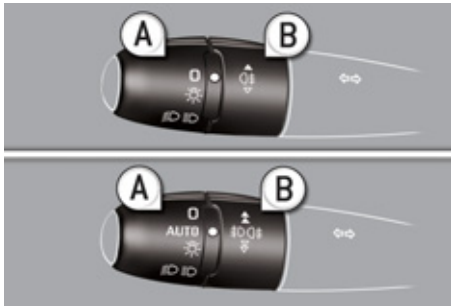


2. Height adjustment.

130

SEEING CLEARLY

Lighting



Ring A

0 Lighting off.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

Dipped / main beam headlamps.

Ring B

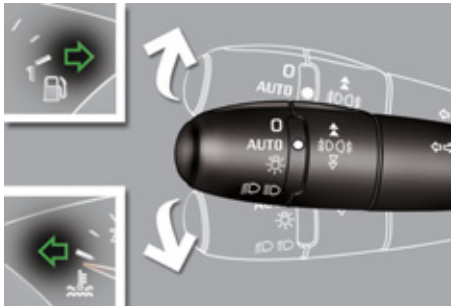
Rear foglamp.

or

Front and rear foglamps.

87

Direction indicators



Raise or lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash for as long as the stalk remains in this position.

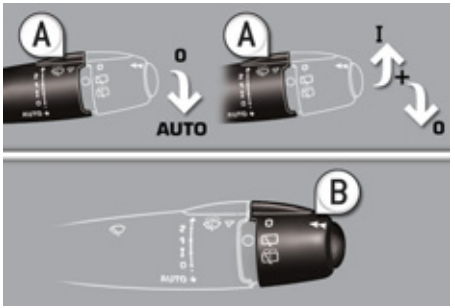
"Motorway" function

Press the lighting stalk up or down once, without passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash three times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful when changing lane on high-speed roads.

124

Wipers



Stalk A: windscreen wipers

Switching on "AUTO"

☞ Press the stalk down and release it.

Switching off "AUTO"

☞ Push the stalk up and return it to position **"0"**.

93

Ring B: rear wiper

0 Park.

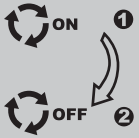
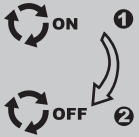
Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe.

94

VENTILATION

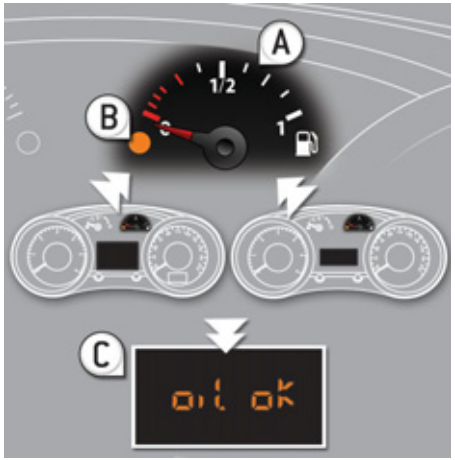
Recommended interior settings

I require ...	Heating or Manual Air Conditioning				
	Air distribution	Air flow	Air recirculation / Intake of outside air	Temperature	Manual A/C
HOT					—
COLD					ON
DEMISTING DEFROSTING					ON

Digital air conditioning: we recommend use of the fully automatic mode by pressing the **"AUTO"** button.

MONITORING

Instrument panel



A. With the ignition on, the needle should indicate the level of fuel remaining.

B. With the engine running, its associated low level warning lamp should go off.

C. With the ignition on, the oil level indicator should display **"OIL OK"** for a few seconds.

If the levels are not correct, top up the levels which are low.

27

Warning lamps



1. With the ignition on, the orange and red warning lamps come on.

2. With the engine running, these warning lamps should go off.

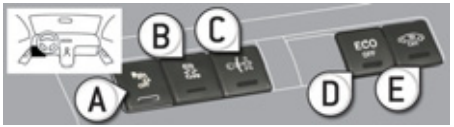
If warning lamps remain on, refer to the page concerned.

29



Switch panels

Lower



Lighting of the indicator lamp indicates the status of the corresponding function.

A. Visual and audible parking sensors. 164

B. ESC/DSC OFF (without Grip control). 127

C. Child lock. 80, 123

D. Deactivating the Stop & Start system. 162

E. Volumetric alarm. 77

Central



F. Head-up display. 145

G. Hazard warning lamps. 124

H. Distance alert. 147

I. Central locking. 82

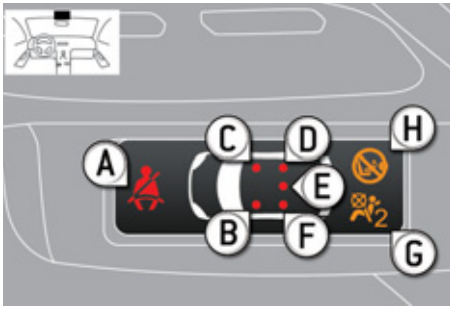
Passenger's front airbag



1. Insert the key.
2. Select the position:
   "OFF" (deactivation), with "rear facing" child seat,
   "ON" (activation), with front passenger or "forwards facing" child seat.
3. Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

134

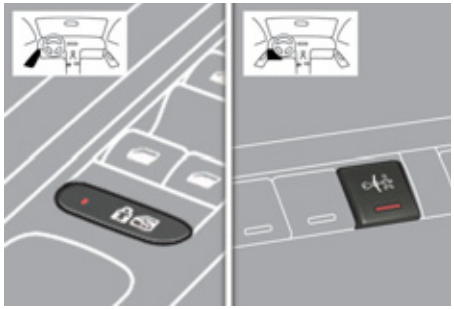
Seat belts and passenger's front airbag



A. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
B. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
C. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
D. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
E. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
F. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.
G. Passenger's front airbag deactivated warning lamp.
H. Passenger's front airbag activated warning lamp.

131

Child lock (locking of the rear doors)



Illumination of the indicator lamp indicates the status of the corresponding function.

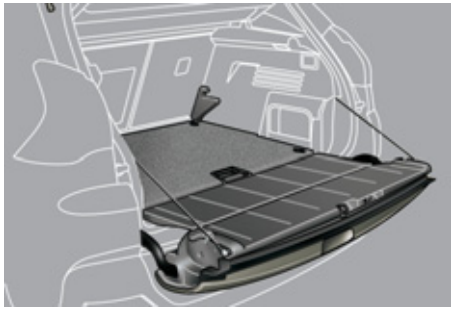
123

ARRANGE YOUR BOOT

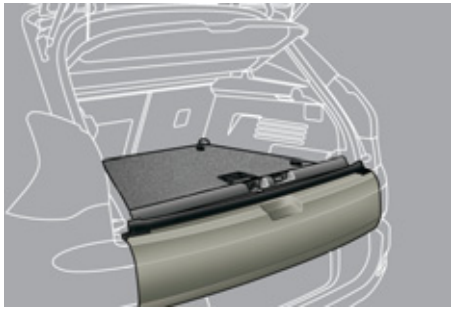
3 position adjustable boot



Low position (150 kg max).



Intermediate position (100 kg max).



High position (50 kg max) with the lower tailgate closed to isolate the lower part of the boot.

- To release the floor, push slightly forwards then raise.
- Use the stops **A**, placed on each side of the boot to change the height of the floor more easily.



From the high position, place the floor in this position (at an angle), two stops support it to allow access underneath it or to the spare wheel.

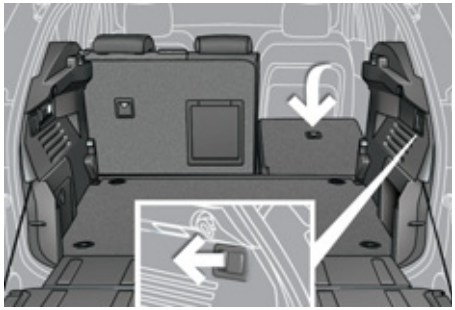
110

ARRANGE YOUR BOOT

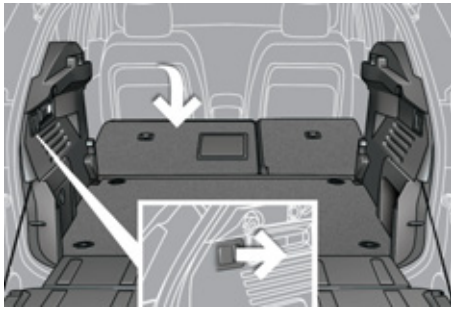
Rear seats



- Place the adjustable floor in the **intermediate position**.
- Check that nothing is preventing the seat backs from folding (front seats sufficiently advanced, head restraints, seat belts, ...).
- Check also that no object on or under the seat could hinder its movement.



- Pull the control of the 1/3 section, from the boot.



- Pull the control of the 2/3 section, from the boot.

The seats are aligned with the adjustable floor and the lower tailgate.

67

Stop & Start

Going into engine STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine automatically goes into standby, **with a 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox** and at speeds below 4 mph (6 km/h), press the brake pedal or put the gear lever in position **N**.

In some circumstances, STOP mode may not be available; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically **with a 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox**:

- gear lever in position **A** or **M**, release the brake pedal,
- or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, move the gear lever to position **A** or **M**,
- or engage reverse.

In some circumstances START mode may be invoked automatically; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

161



Deactivation / Reactivation

You can deactivate the system at any time by pressing the **"ECO OFF"** button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Before refuelling or doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition using the key.

Electric parking brake



Manual application / release

The parking brake can be **applied** manually by **pulling** the control lever **A**.

When the ignition is on, the parking brake can be **released** manually by **pressing the brake pedal** and **pulling** then **releasing** the control lever **A**.

Before getting out of the vehicle, check that the braking warning lamp (**red !**) and the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A**, are on (not flashing).

If you get out of your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually.



Automatic application / release

Press the accelerator and release the clutch, the parking brake is released automatically and progressively on acceleration.

When the **engine is switched off**, the parking brake is **applied** automatically.

AUTO P OFF

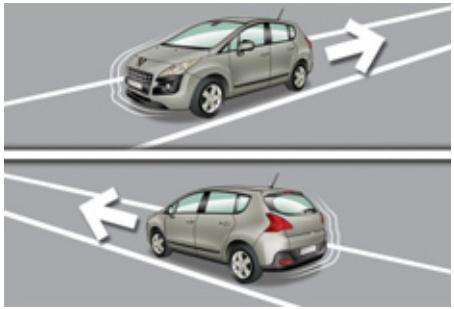
If this warning lamp is on in the instrument panel, the automatic application/release function is **deactivated**.

Before getting out of the vehicle, check that the braking warning lamp (**red !**) and the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** are on (not flashing).

Do not leave a child alone in the vehicle with the ignition on; they could release the parking brake.

137

Hill start assist



Your vehicle is equipped with a system which keeps it immobile for a short time (approximately 2 seconds) to assist you when starting on a hill, the time required for you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active:

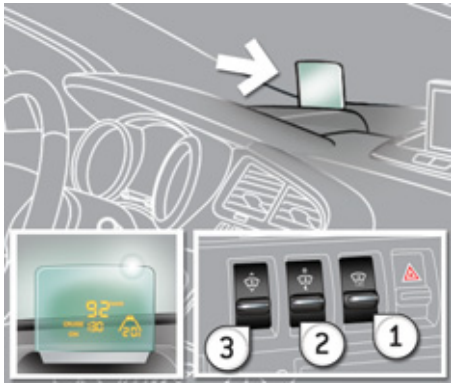
- when the vehicle has been immobilised completely with your foot on the brake pedal,
- on certain gradients,
- when the driver's door is closed.

Do not get out of the vehicle during the hill start assist temporary hold phase.

142

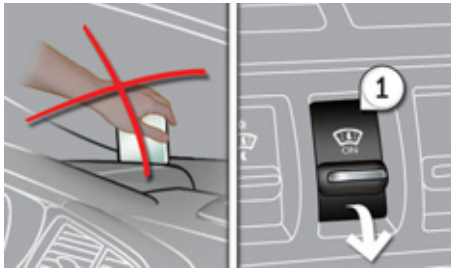
DRIVING SAFELY

Head-up display

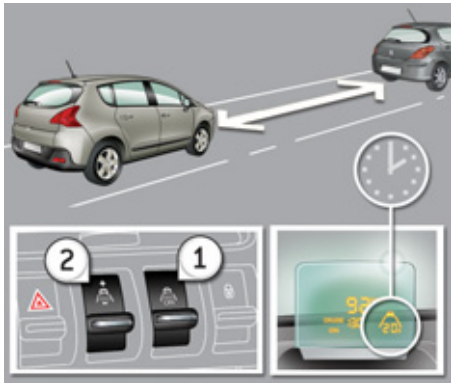


1. Head-up display on / off.
2. Brightness adjustment.
3. Display height adjustment.

145



Distance alert

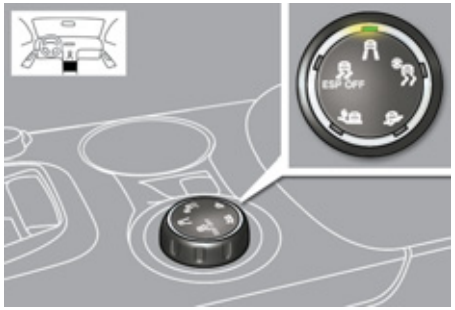


1. Distance alert on /off.
2. Alert value increase / decrease.

147

The adjustments must be made with the engine running and the vehicle stationary.

Grip control



Normal mode.

Snow mode.

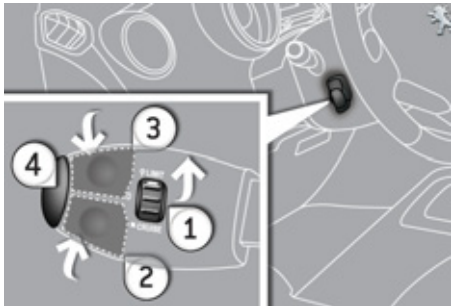
Mud mode.

Sand mode.

ESP OFF.

128

Speed limiter "LIMIT"

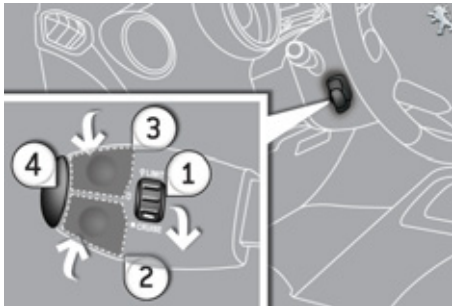


1. Limiter mode Selection / Off.
2. Decreasing the programmed value.
3. Increasing the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On / Off.

The values must be set with the engine running.

149

Cruise control "CRUISE"

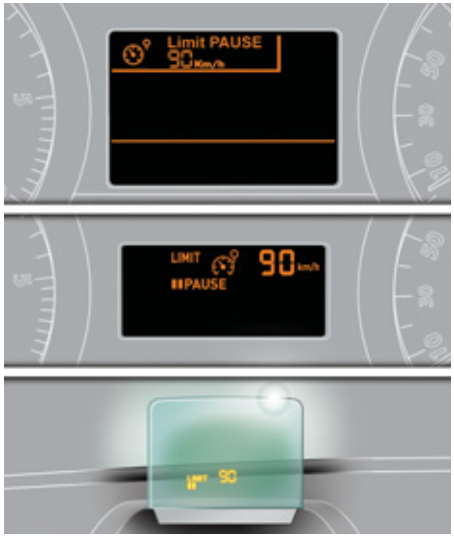


1. Cruise control mode Selection / Off.
2. Programming a speed / Decreasing the programmed value.
3. Programming a speed / Increasing the programmed value.
4. Cruise control Off / Resume.

In order to be programmed or activated, the vehicle speed must be higher than 25 mph (40 km/h), with at least fourth gear engaged on the manual gearbox (second gear for the 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox).

151

Display in the instrument panel



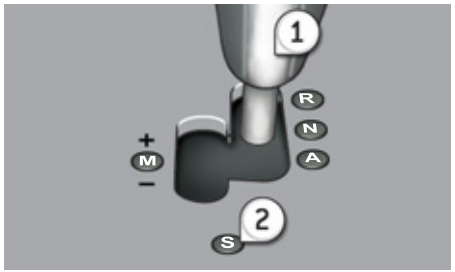
The cruise control or speed limiter mode appears in the instrument panel when it is selected.

Cruise control

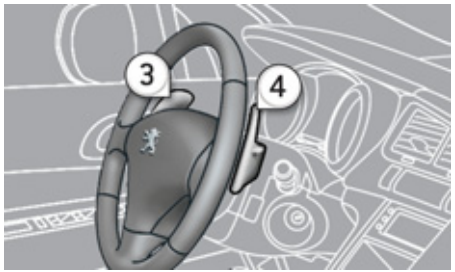
Speed limiter

6-speed electronic gear control gearbox

This 6-speed gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.



1. Gear lever.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.



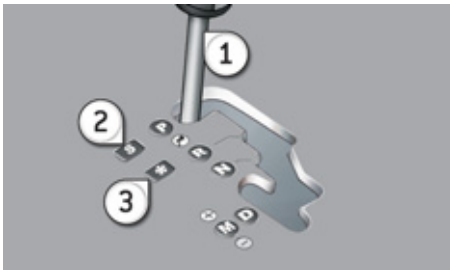
3. Steering mounted **"-"** paddle.
4. Steering mounted **"+"** paddle.

Moving off

- Select position **N** and press the brake pedal firmly while starting the engine.
- Engage first gear (position **A** or **M**) or reverse (position **R**) using the gear lever **1**.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal then accelerate.

154

"Porsche Tiptronic System" automatic gearbox



This six-speed gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

1. Gear lever.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.
3. Button **"❄" (snow)**.

Moving off

- Select position **P** or **N** and press the brake pedal firmly while starting the engine.
- Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal, then accelerate.

158

ECO-DRIVING

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently, change up without waiting and drive by changing up quite soon. If your vehicle has the system, the gear shift indicator invites you to change up; it is displayed in the instrument panel, follow its instructions.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, stay in Drive **"D"** or Auto **"A"**, according to the type of gearbox, without pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic digital regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended by the manufacturer.

When refuelling, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

INSTRUMENT PANELS



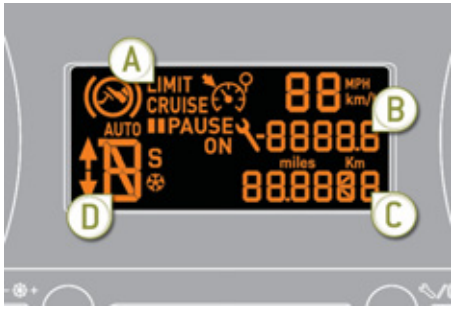
Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.

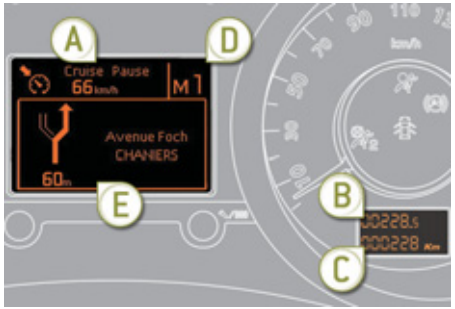
Dials

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the engine speed (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (°Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Speedometer.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
5. **Screen.**
6. **Display zero reset or service indicator re-display button.**
   Resets the selected function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator) or displays the service indicator again.
7. **Instrument panel lighting dimmer.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls, if the vehicle lighting is on.

For more information, refer to the section corresponding to the button or function and its associated display.

Screen(s)





A. Speed limiter
or
Cruise control.
(mph or km/h)

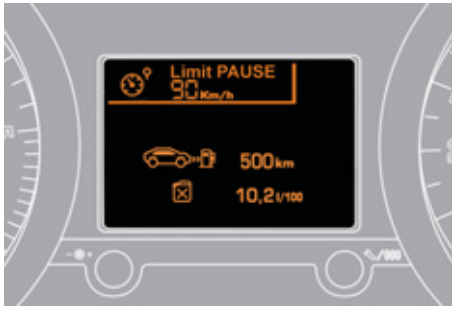
B. Trip distance recorder.
(miles or km)

C. Service indicator.
(miles or km) or,
Engine oil level indicator.
or
distance recorder.
(miles or km)

D. 6-speed electronic gear control or automatic gearbox.

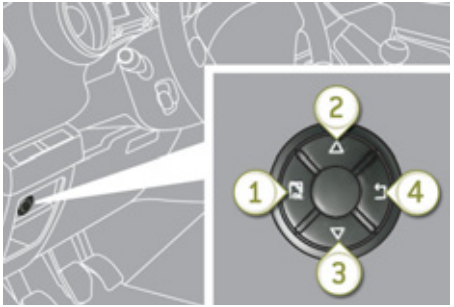
E. Warning messages and function status messages, trip computer, GPS navigation information.

Instrument panel navigator



This group of buttons permits:

- **When stationary**, configuration of the vehicle's equipment and the screen settings (languages, units...),
- **While driving**, scrolling of the active functions (trip computer, navigation...).



Controls

There are four buttons to control the screen in the instrument panel:

1. Access the main menu, confirm the selection.
2. Move up through the menu.
3. Move down through the menu.
4. Return to the previous display, exit from the menu.

The main menu and its associated functions can only be accessed when stationary, via buttons **1** to **4**.

A message appears in the screen, above a certain speed threshold, indicating that the main menu cannot be displayed.

The trip computer displays can only be accessed while driving, via buttons **2** and **3** (refer to the "Trip computer" section).

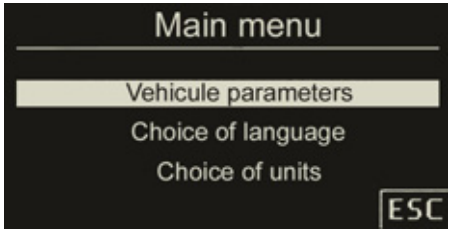
Main menu

☞ Press button **1** for access to the main menu and select one of the following functions:
- "Vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Choice of units".

☞ Press button **2** or **3** to move in the screen.

☞ Press button **1** again to confirm the selection.

Vehicle parameters



This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment*:
- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic or manual parking brake (refer to the "Driving" section).

Choice of language

This menu allows you to select the display language: Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Türkçe*.

Choice of units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

INDICATOR AND WARNING LAMPS

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lamps) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

The warning lamps may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.

Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two different modes. Only by relating the type of illumination to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.

* According to country.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on).	Wait until the warning lamp has switched off before starting. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Electric parking brake**	fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, pull the electric parking brake control lever. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (according to country) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is not possible. The parking brake can be released manually using the emergency release procedure. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Foot on the brake pedal**	fixed.	The brake pedal must be pressed.	Press the brake pedal to start the engine with the 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox (lever in position **N**) or automatic gearbox (lever in position **P**). If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.
		flashing.	In the case of an electronic gear control gearbox, if you hold the vehicle on an incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats.	Use the brake pedal and/or the electric parking brake.
	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on special cases with STOP mode and START mode, refer to the "Stop & Start" section.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed.	The control, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. In this case you can install a "rear facing" child seat.	Set the control to the **ON** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rear-facing position.
	**Dynamic stability control DSC/ASR**	fixed.	The button (located at the bottom left of the dashboard) or the Grip control dial is operated. Its indicator lamp comes on. DSC/ASR is deactivated. DSC: dynamic stability control. ASR: anti-slip regulation.	Press the button to activate the DSC/ASR or turn the Grip control dial to ESP. Its indicator lamp goes off. From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically. The DSC/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message in the multifunction screen.

If you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious braking system, power steering, engine lubrication or cooling system malfunction or a punctured tyre.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Service**	on temporarily.	A minor fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen, such as, for example: - the closing of the doors, boot or bonnet, - the engine oil level, - the screenwash level, - the remote control battery, - the tyre pressures, - saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel). - ... For any other faults, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	A major fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown on the screen and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	PEF: particle emissions filter, Diesel	fixed, associated temporarily with a message on the risk of blockage of the PEF.	This indicates the start of saturation of the particle emissions filter.	As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 35 mph (60 km/h) until the service warning lamp goes off.
		fixed.	This indicates the low level in the Diesel additive reservoir.	Have the level topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

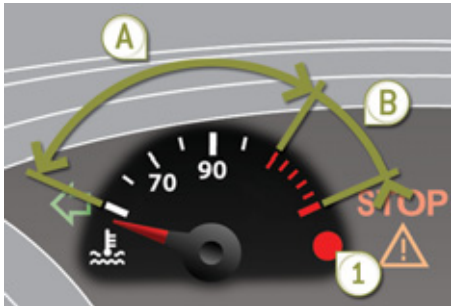
Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Electric parking brake**	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Electric parking brake fault**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. The parking brake can be released manually using the emergency release procedure. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by PEUGEOT. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop .
		fixed, associated with the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp, if the parking brake is released.	The braking system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle.
		fixed.	Unless it has been deactivated (button pressed and its indicator lamp on) the DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop.
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	**Low fuel level**	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	When it first comes on there remains approximately **6 litres** of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. Fuel tank capacity: approximately **60 litres**. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Battery charge**	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Door(s) open**	fixed if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h). fixed and accompanied by an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door, the boot, the lower tailgate or the bonnet (with alarm only) is still open.	Close the door or boot.
	**Seat belt not fastened / unfastened**	fixed then flashing accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	**Airbags**	on temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Water in Diesel**	fixed.	The Diesel fuel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Directional headlamps	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Under-inflated tyre	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the max temperature warning lamp **1** and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated using the distance covered since the last time the service indicator was reset.



More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 186 miles (300 km).

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



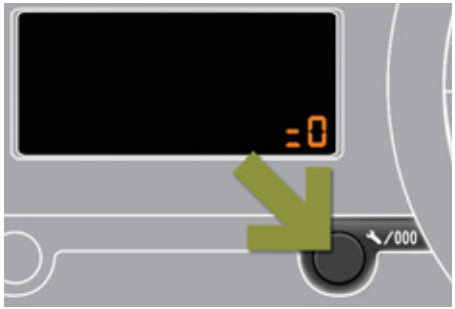
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driving conditions.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- Press the trip distance recorder zero reset button.

  The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator

This information is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.



The level shown will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level low



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL"**, linked with the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

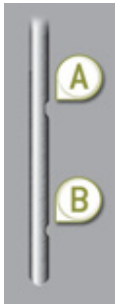
Oil level indicator fault



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL--"**. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dipstick

Refer to the "Checks" section to locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap on your engine.

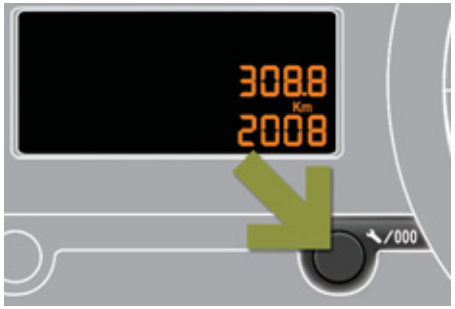


There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level (risk of damage to the engine),
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the grade of oil suited to your engine.

Total distance recorder

System which measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life.

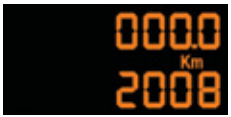


The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

To conform to legislation in the country you are crossing, change the units of distance (miles or km) via the configuration menu.

Trip distance recorder

System which measures a distance travelled during a day or other period since it was reset to zero by the driver.



☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel in relation to the exterior brightness.



Activation

When the vehicle lighting is on:

☞ press the button to change the brightness of the instrument panel,

☞ when the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it,

or

☞ when the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it,

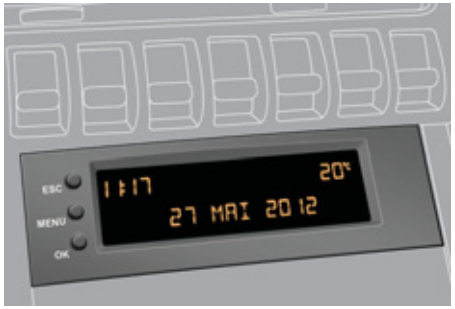
☞ when the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

When the vehicle lighting is on, you cannot switch the instrument panel lighting off but you can adjust it to minimum.

Deactivation

When the lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

MONOCHROME SCREEN A (WITHOUT AUDIO EQUIPMENT)



Displays on the screen

This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- status of the openings (doors, boot, ...),
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. Some can be cleared by pressing the **"ESC"** button.

Controls



There are three display control buttons:

- **"ESC"** to abandon the operation in progress,
- **"MENU"** to scroll through the menus or sub-menus,
- **"OK"** to select the menu or sub-menu required.

Main menu



☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to scroll through the various menus of the **main menu**:

- vehicle configuration,
- options,
- display settings,
- languages,
- units.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

* With air conditioning only.



Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment (according to country):

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- "guide-me-home" and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic or manual parking brake (refer to the "Driving" section),
- ...

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Display settings

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the **"OK"** button to change its value.



☞ Wait for approximately ten seconds without any action to allow the changed data to be recorded or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

The screen then returns to the normal display.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe, Deutsch, English, Espanol).

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units for:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

MONOCHROME SCREEN A (WITH AUDIO EQUIPMENT)



Displays in the screen

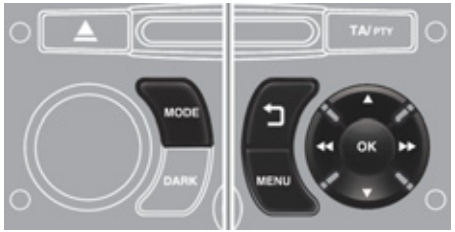
This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- status of the openings (doors, boot, ...),
- audio sources (radio, CD, ...),
- trip computer (refer to the corresponding section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. Some can be cleared by pressing the **"<] arrow"** button.

* With air conditioning only.

Controls



From the audio equipment control panel, you can:

- press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source, ...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the **"OK"** button to confirm,

or



- press this button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



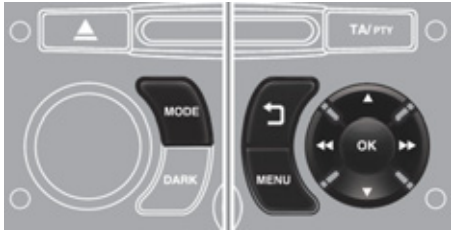
- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
  - radio-CD,
  - vehicle configuration,
  - options,
  - display settings,
  - languages,
  - units.
- Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio-CD

With the audio equipment switched on, once the "Radio-CD" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG), the CD or the CD changer (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).



For more information on the "Radio-CD" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle Configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment (according to country):

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic or manual parking brake (refer to the "Driving" section),
- ...

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Display settings

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change its value.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the **"◁] arrow"** button to cancel.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display.

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units of the following parameters:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

MONOCHROME SCREEN C
(WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT SOUND (RD5))

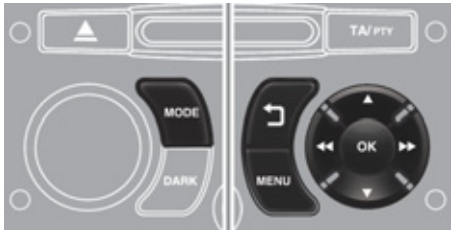


Displays in the screen

Displays according to context:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature with air conditioning (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- status of the openings (doors, boot...),
- audio functions,
- trip computer (see the corresponding section),
- alert messages,
- screen and vehicle equipment parameter setting menus.

Controls



From the audio equipment control panel, you can:

- press the "**MENU**" button for access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the "**MODE**" button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the "**OK**" button to confirm,

or



- press this button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - audio functions,
  - trip computer (see the corresponding section),
  - personalisation-configuration,
  - telephone (Bluetooth system).

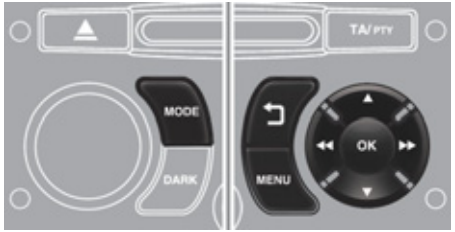
- Press the"▲" or "▼" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the "**OK**" button.

"Audio functions" menu

With the audio equipment switched on, once this menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText) or CD (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).



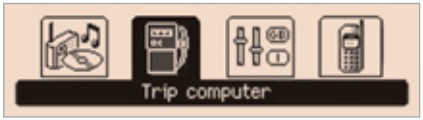
For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) section.



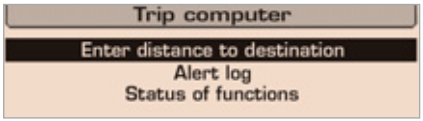
"Trip computer" menu

Once this menu has been selected, you can consult information concerning the status of the vehicle (alert log, status of the functions...).

- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the general menu.
- ☞ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"Trip computer"** menu.



- ☞ On the **"Trip computer"** menu, select one of the applications:



Enter the distance to the destination

This allows you to enter an approximate value for the distance to the final destination.

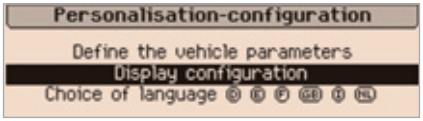
Alert log

This summarises the active warning messages, displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen

Status of functions

This summarises the active or inactive status of the functions present on the vehicle.

"Personalisation-Configuration" menu



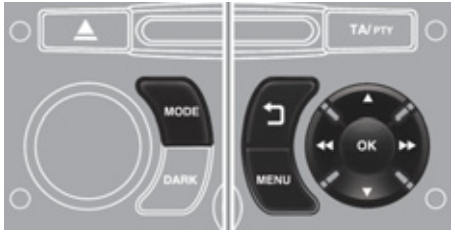
Once this menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following functions:

- define the vehicle parameters,
- display configuration,
- choice of language.

Define the vehicle parameters

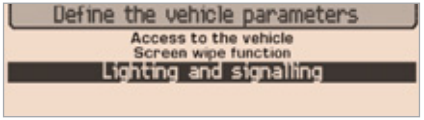
Once this menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment (according to country):

- wiper linked with reverse gear (see "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (see the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home lighting (see the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (see the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (see the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (see the "Visibility" section),
- automatic or manual parking brake (see the "Driving" section),
- ...

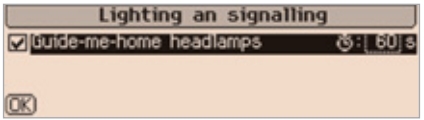


Example: setting of the duration of the guide-me-home lighting

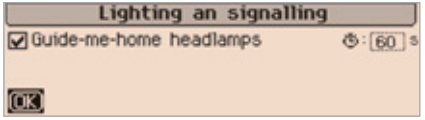
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "**OK**" button to select the menu required.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "**OK**" button to select the "Guide-me-home headlamps" line.



☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the "**OK**" button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "**OK**" button to select the "**OK**" box and confirm or press the "**◁] arrow**" button to cancel.

Display configuration

Once this menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- brightness-video setting,
- date and time setting,
- selection of the units.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can change the screen display language.

"Telephone" menu

With the audio equipment switched on, once this menu has been selected you can configure your Bluetooth hands-free kit (pairing), consult the various telephone directories (calls log, services...) and manage your communications (pick up, hang up, call waiting, secret mode...).

For more information on the telephone application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) section.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

16/9 RETRACTABLE COLOUR SCREEN (WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT NAVIGATION (RT6) OR PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA NAVIGATION (NG4 3D))



Displays in the screen

When the screen is unfolded, it displays the following information automatically and directly:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- doors check,
- warning and vehicle function status messages, displayed temporarily,
- audio functions,
- trip computer information.
- satellite navigation system information.

Depending on the equipment fitted to your vehicle, the trip computer information appears in either the multifunction screen or the instrument panel screen.

Controls



From the audio system control panel:

- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"SETUP"** or **"PHONE"** button for access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn the navigator to move the selection,
- ☞ press the navigator to confirm the selection,

or

- ☞ press the this button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

For operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjustment of the position, etc.), refer to the paragraph "Access to the retractable screen".

"SETUP" menu

☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button for access to the **"SETUP"** menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:
- "Languages" (Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6)),
- "Languages and voice functions" (Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D))
- "Date and time",
- "Display",
- "Vehicle parameters" (Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6)),
- "Units",
- "System".

Languages (Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6))

This menu allows you to select the lannsguage used by the display.

Languages and voice functions (Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D))

This menu allows you to:
- select the language used by the disnsplay,
- select the settings for voice recognition (on/off, instructions on use, personal voice training...),
- adjust the volume of the voice synthesiser.

Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time.

Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

Vehicle parameters (Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6))

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment*:
- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic or manual parking brake (refer to the "Driving" section),
- ...

Units

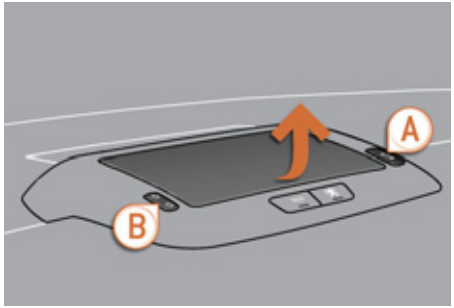
This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and fuel consumption (km/l, l/100 or mpg).

System

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate scrolling text.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

* According to country.



Access to the retractable screen

This screen is opened and stored automatically.

However, you can also open it, store it and adjust it using the various manual controls:

- opening or storing by means of control **A**,
- angle adjustments by means of control **B**.

It is also fitted with safety auto-reverse protection.

Opening the screen

☞ With the screen stored, press control **A** to open it.

The screen opens automatically when the ignition is switched on, when the audio and telematics system is switched on, when an outgoing telephone call is made, when a voice command is given and when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is received.

If you close the screen during operation of the audio and telematics system, it will re-open automatically when an outgoing telephone call is made, when a voice command is given or when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is received.

Closing the screen

☞ With the screen open, press control **A** to store it.

The screen is stored automatically when the ignition is switched off, after approximately three seconds, if the audio and telematics system is off.

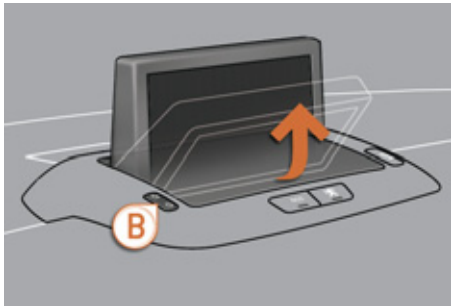
Safety auto-reverse

If the screen meets an obstacle as it opens or closes, the movement stops immediately and is reversed by a few millimetres.

After clearing the obstacle, issue the command required again.

If you wish the screen to open or close automatically when the audio and telematics system is switched on or off, the screen must not be closed when the audio and telematics system is operating.

Adjusting the position of the screen



When the screen is open, you can adjust it precisely in different ways:

☞ press the corresponding part of control **B** to move the screen towards you or towards the windscreen,

or

☞ push or pull the screen gently by hand.

Storing the position of the screen

The system has four pre-set positions in its memory.

Each time the screen is closed, the system stores the last position of the screen.

Each time the screen is re-opened, the system returns the screen to the pre-set position closest to that stored.

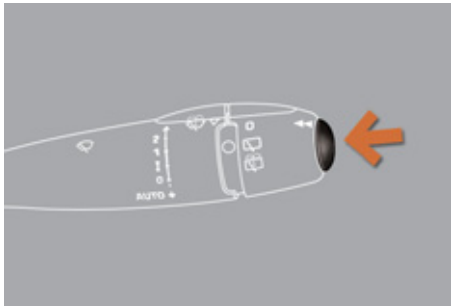
TRIP COMPUTER

System that gives you information on the journey in progress (range, fuel consumption…).

Monochrome screen A



Information displays



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer data in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,

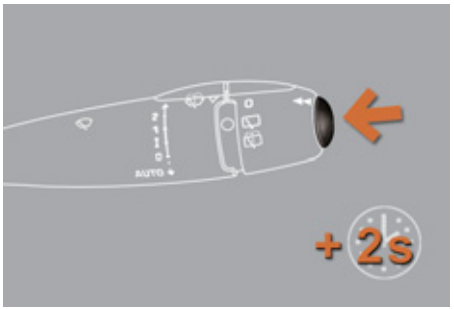


- average speed.



☞ The next press returns you to the normal display.

Zero reset



☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the trip (range, consumption…).

Monochrome screen C



16/9 colour screen

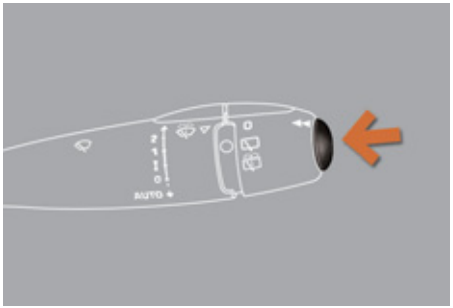


Instrument panel screen



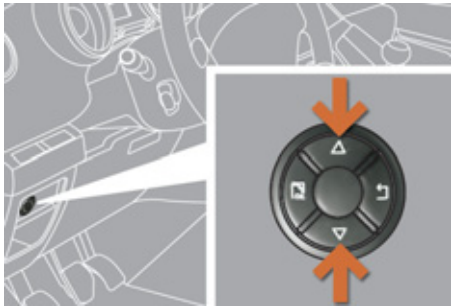
Information displays

With the screen C or the colour screen



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

With the instrument panel screen



☞ Press the up and down arrows on the navigator to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the trip computer information appears on the multifunction screen or on the instrument panel screen.



- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the distance remaining to be travelled.



- The trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the first trip.



- The trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

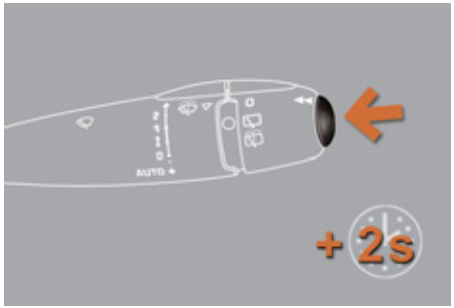
  for the second trip.

☞ Pressing the button again takes you to a black screen.

A further press returns you to the normal display.

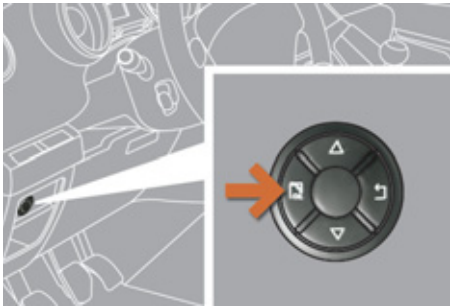
Trip zero reset

With the screen C or the colour screen



☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the control for more than two seconds.

With the instrument panel screen



☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the **"OK"** button on the navigator for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Trip computer, a few definitions



Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank. Related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Distance remaining to destination

(miles or km)

This is the distance remaining to be travelled to the final destination. It is either calculated instantly by the navigation system, if guidance is activated, or entered by the user.

If the distance is not entered, dashes are displayed in place of the digits.

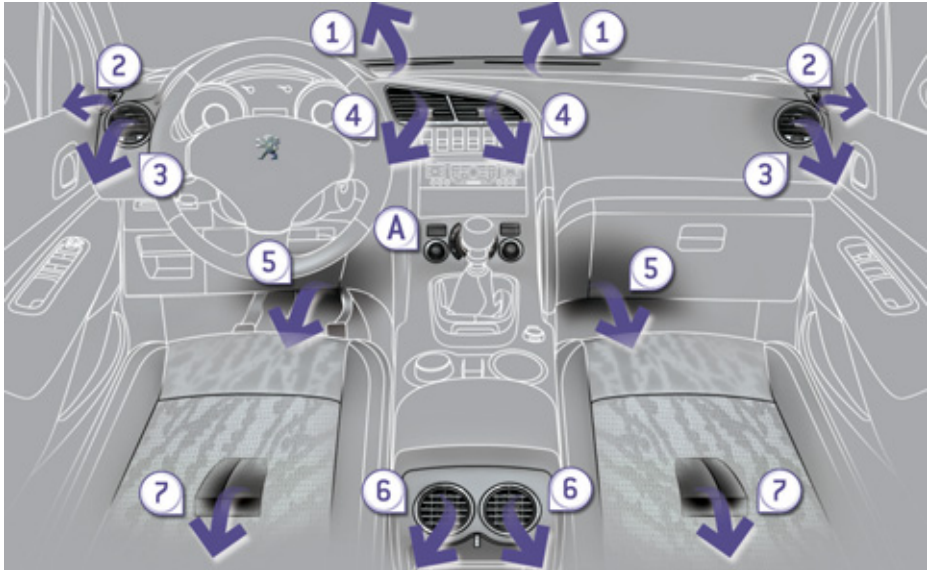


Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.



HEATING AND VENTILATION

System which creates and maintains good conditions of comfort and visibility in the vehicle's passenger compartment.

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver, the front passenger and rear passengers, according to the level of equipment.

The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.

The air distribution control enables you to select the air vents used in the passenger compartment by the combined use of the associated buttons.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation fan.

These controls are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.

Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Adjustable air vents for the rear passengers.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- If the interior temperature remains very high after the vehicle has been parked in the sun for a considerable time, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few minutes.

  Place the air flow control at a sufficient level to provide an adequate renewal of air in the passenger compartment.
- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Use in preference the intake of exterior air as prolonged use of the air recirculation may cause misting of the windows and side windows.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly (refer to the "Checks" section).

  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its second special active filter, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- The air conditioning uses power from the engine while operating. This results in an increase in the vehicle's fuel consumption.

  When towing at or near maximum capacity or on steep slopes in high ambient temperatures, switching off the air conditioning saves engine power and so improves towing capacity.

  Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle when stationary, which is perfectly normal.
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly.
- If the system does not produce cold air, do not use it and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING



The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.

1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0** (de-activation of the system), the temperature is no longer maintained at a comfortable level. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

3. Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and front-rear footwells.



Footwells, front-rear

(closing the vents increases the flow to the footwells).



Central, side and rear vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air limits misting of the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air insulates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the air quality and demisting performance.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.



Demisting/defrosting



The marking on the control panel indicates the position of the controls to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows:

- ☞ place the air intake control **4** in the "Exterior air intake" position (indicator lamp off),
- ☞ place the air distribution dial **3** in the "Windscreen position",
- ☞ place the air flow dial **2** in position 5 (maximum),
- ☞ place the temperature dial **1** in the red position (hot).

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "**0**".

To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

REAR SCREEN DEMIST - DEFROST



The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demist/defrost switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demist/defrost operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

☞ Switch off the demist/defrost of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as it is no longer needed as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

DUAL-ZONE DIGITAL AIR CONDITIONING



The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.

Automatic operation

1. Automatic comfort programme



☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

We recommend the use of this mode: it permits automatic and optimised adjustment of all of the functions, passenger compartment temperature, air flow, air distribution and air recirculation, in accordance with the comfort value that you have chosen.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

To prevent too great a distribution of cold air when the engine is cold, the air flow will reach its optimum level gradually.

In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, side windows and footwells only.

2-3. Driver-passenger side adjustment



The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated in the screen corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

You are advised to avoid a left / right setting difference of more than 3.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required more quickly. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

4. Automatic visibility programme



The automatic comfort programme may not be sufficient to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows (humidity, several passengers, ice, etc.).

☞ In this case, select the automatic visibility programme.

The system automatically controls the air conditioning, the air flow and the air intake and provides optimum distribution of the ventilation to the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To switch it off, press the **"visibility"** button again or press the **"AUTO"** button, the indicator lamp in the button goes off or the indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** (low) is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** (high) is displayed.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp in the **"A/C"** button comes on.

To obtain cool air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments. The return to the intake of exterior air.

In winter, we recommend keeping the rear air vents closed.

6. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the windscreen, the side windows and the vents,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the vents and the footwells,
- the vents and the footwells,
- the vents,
- the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells.

7. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively in relation to the value requested.

8. Air recirculation



☞ Press this button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp for the button corresponding to the function chosen comes on.

- Closed/Air intake (automatic mode). Press this button, the indicator lamp comes on.
- Forced closing of air intake (manual mode). press this button to recirculate the interior air, the indicator lamp comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ As soon as possible, press the "auto" button to allow the intake of exterior air and avoid misting.

9. Mono-zone / Dual-zone



☞ Press this button to equalise the comfort value on the passenger side with that on the driver's side (mono-zone). The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Switching the system off and on again

☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off all of the functions of the system.

Temperature related comfort is no longer guaranteed but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

☞ Turn the air flow dial to the right or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the system off.

FRONT SEATS WITH MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

Forwards-backwards

☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height

☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as required, to obtain the position required.

Seat back angle

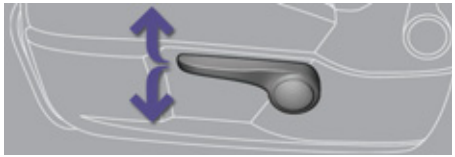
☞ Push the control rearwards.













DRIVER'S ELECTRIC SEAT

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

The electrical functions of the driver's seat are active approximately one minute after opening the front door. They are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off and in economy mode.

To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Forwards-backwards

☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Cushion height and angle

☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Backrest angle

☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat back.

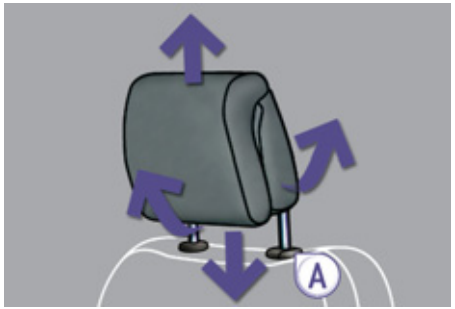






Head restraint height and angle adjustment

- To raise the head restraint, pull it forwards and upwards at the same time.
- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.
- To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or rearwards.



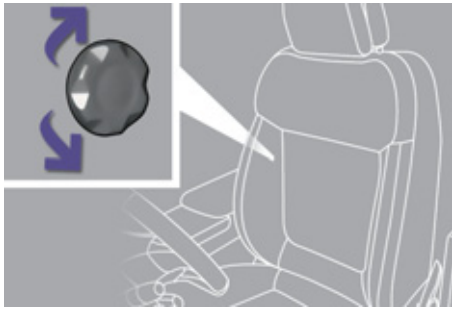
The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.

The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Manual lumbar adjustment

- Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.



Heated seats control

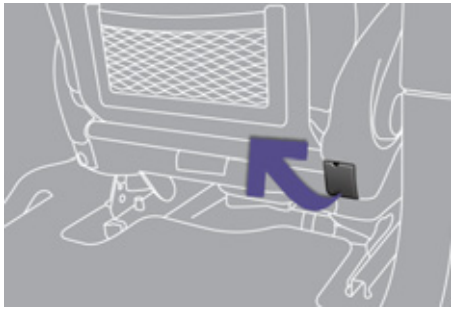
With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

- Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

0: Off.
1: Low.
2: Medium.
3: High.

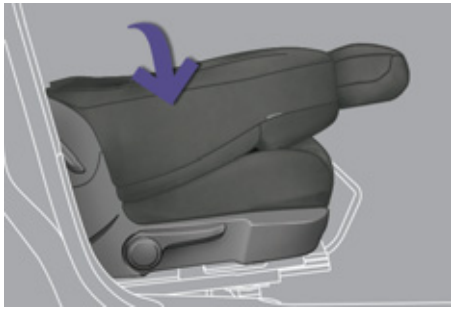


Table position, front passenger seat



Folding the seat backrest

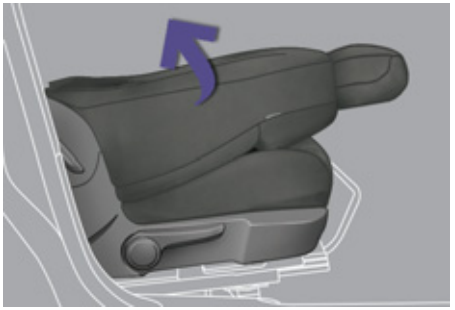
- ☞ Check that no object, either on or underneath the seat, could hinder its movement.
- ☞ To make the operation easier, place the head restraint in the low position (if the seat is in the fully forward position).
- ☞ If your vehicle is fitted with the video pack, place the protective cover on the head restraint.
- ☞ Lift the control, located behind the seat, then guide the seat backrest forwards.



When the seat backrest is in this position, the seat behind it and the centre rear seat must not be occupied.

This position, associated with that of the rear seats, allows you to transport long objects inside the vehicle.

The maximum weight on the seat is 30 kg.



Returning the seat to the normal position

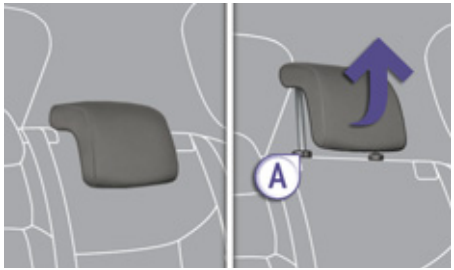
- ☞ Guide the seat backrest rearwards until it locks in place.

REAR SEATS

Bench seat the left-hand (2/3) or right-hand (1/3) section of which can be folded to adapt the boot load space.

Rear head restraints

These have a high position (comfort and safety) and a low position (rear visibility).



They can also be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

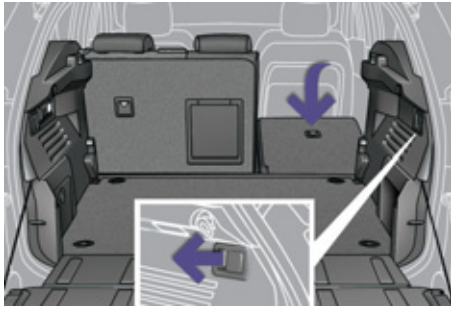
- ☞ Pull the head restraint fully upwards.
- ☞ Then, press the lug **A**.

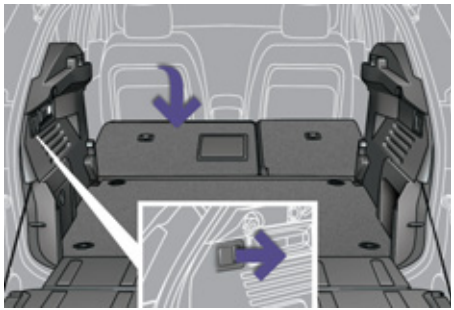
Never drive with rear passengers when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints must be in place and in the high position.

Folding the seat from the boot

Each section of the bench seat (1/3 or 2/3) has its own control to release the seat back and its seat cushion from the boot.

- ☞ Check that nothing is preventing the seat back from folding (head restraint, seat belts, ...).
- ☞ Check also that no object on or under the seat could hinder its movement.
- ☞ Pull the control from the boot.





Folding the seat from the rear

Check that no object, either on or underneath the seat, could hinder its movement.

- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat back.
- ☞ Place the head restraints in the low position or remove them if necessary.
- ☞ Pull the control **1** forwards to release the seat back **2** which tilts easily onto the seat cushion **3**.





Returning the seat back to its original position

- ☞ Put the seat back in the upright position and secure it, the seat cushion also returns to its original position.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator, located at the control **1**, is no longer visible,
- ☞ Refit the head restraints or put them back in place.

When returning the rear seat back to its original position, take care not to trap the seat belts and ensure that their buckles are positioned correctly.



The seat cushion lowers to be covered by the seat back; this leaves a flat boot floor, if the adjustable floor is in the intermediate position.

MIRRORS



Door mirrors

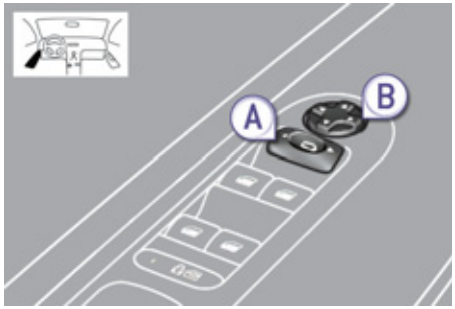
Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen (refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" page).

The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

Adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- Automatic: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- Automatic: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

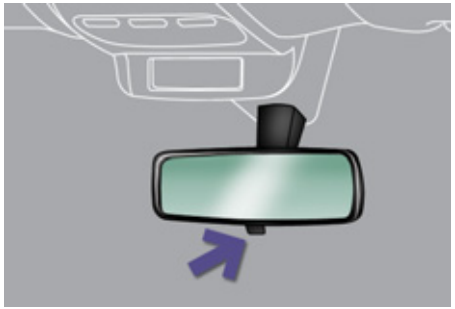
Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual day/night model



Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

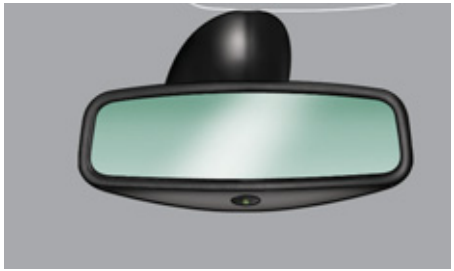
Day / night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

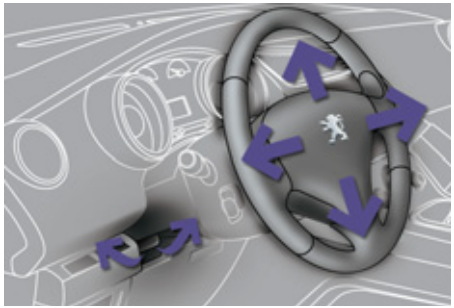
Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT

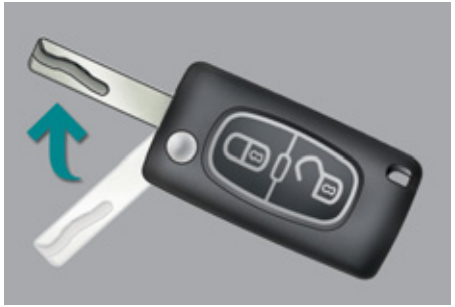


- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.



Unlocking the vehicle

Unfolding the key



☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Complete unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

Selective unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Selective unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Each unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

The selective unlocking is only available on versions fitted with deadlocking.



The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will relock automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

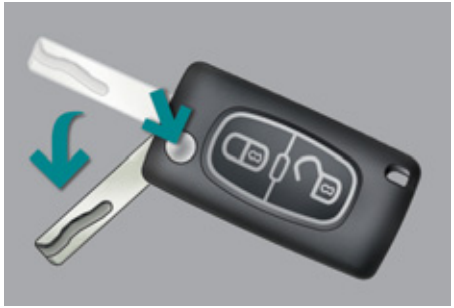
Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



Folding the key



☞ First press this button to fold the key.

If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

Locating your vehicle

☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

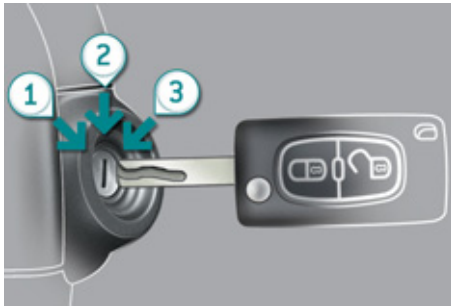
In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Starting the vehicle

- Insert the key in the ignition switch.

  The system recognises the starting code.
- Turn the key fully towards the dashboard to position **3 (Starting)**.
- When the engine starts, release the key.



Switching the vehicle off

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, the wipers, the dipped headlamps, the courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined period of thirty minutes.

For more information, refer to the "Practical information - Energy economy mode" secnstion.

A heavy object (key fob...), attached to the key and weighing down on its shaft in the ignition switch, could cause a malfunction.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote connstrol.

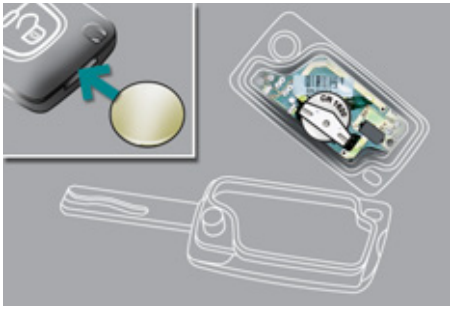
If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.

If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the casing.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

Lost keys

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

However, the vehicle unlocks automatically in the event of a serious impact causing airbag deployment.

As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.

In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

ALARM

System which protects and provides a deterrent against the theft of your vehicle. It provides two types of protection, exterior and interior, as well as an anti-tamper function.

Exterior perimiter protection

The system detects opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to enter the vehicle by forcing a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric protection

The system detects any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or moves inside the vehicle.

If you wish to leave a pet in the vehicle or a window partially open, deactivate the interior volumetric protection.

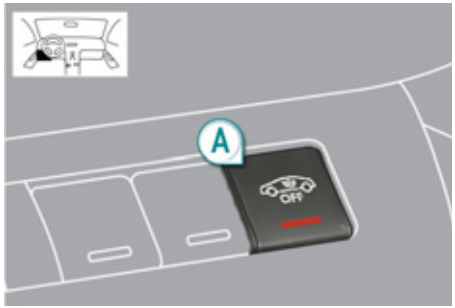
Anti-tamper function

The system detects the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to put the wires of the siren, the central control or the battery out of service.

Do not make any modifications to the alarm system, this could cause malfunctions.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm



Activation

- Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The alarm is activated; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.

Deactivation

- Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm is deactivated; the indicator lamp in button **A** switches off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior protection alarm only

Deactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- Switch off the ignition.
- Within ten seconds, press button **A** until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- Get out of the vehicle.
- Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The exterior protection alarm alone remains activated; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.
- Relock the vehicle using the remote control.

The alarm is activated again with both types of protection; the indicator lamp in button **A** switches off.

Triggering

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for approximately thirty seconds.

After it has been triggered, the alarm is again operational.

If the alarm is triggered ten times in succession, the eleventh time will result in it becoming inactive.

If the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes rapidly, this indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

To avoid triggering the alarm when washing your vehicle, lock it using the key in the driver's door lock.

Do not activate the alarm before disconnecting the battery, otherwise the siren will sound.

Failure of the remote control

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.

☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, illumination the indicator lamp in button **A** for ten seconds indicates a siren fault.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic operation*

Depending on the legislation in force in your country, one of these cases may occur:

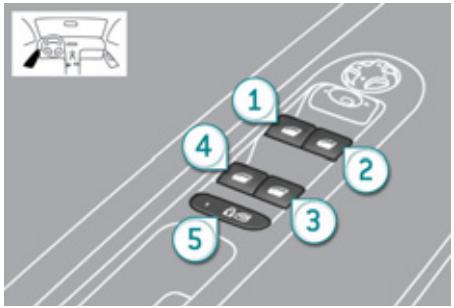
- 45 seconds after the vehicle is locked using the remote control, the alarm is activated, regardless of the status of the doors and boot.
- 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the alarm is activated.

☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* According to country.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

System intended to open or close a window manually or automatically. Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a system for deactivation in the event of misuse of the rear controls.



1. **Driver**
2. **Passenger**
3. **Rear right**
4. **Rear left**
5. **Deactivation of the rear electric windows and doors.**

One-touch electric windows

Manual mode

☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

Automatic mode

☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.

☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a front door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control pad of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated to prevent damage to the electric window motor.

After this, you have approximately one minute within which to close the window.

Once the window is closed, the controls will become available again after approximately 40 minutes.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

☞ Press and hold the control until the window opens fully.

☞ Then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes.

☞ Continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again, repeat these operations until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric windows and doors



- ☞ For the safety of your children, with the ignition on, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

It is still possible to open the doors from the outside and operate the rear electric windows from the driver's control panel.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (see "Child lock").

Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

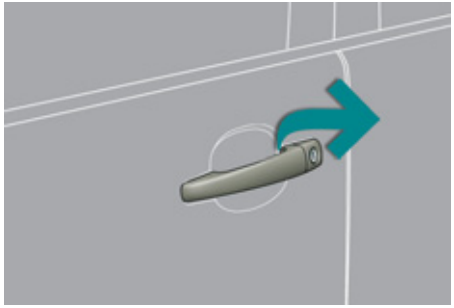
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

DOORS

Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside



☞ Pull the door control (front or rear) to open the door; this unlocks this vehicle completely.

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Closing

When a door or the boot is not closed correctly:

- **When the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **When the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

Centralised locking control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors from the inside.



Locking

☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

When locking / deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

☞ After normal locking, pull the interior door lever to unlock the vehicle.

☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic central locking

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and boot while driving, if they are closed correctly.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

Activation



☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and boot lock automatically.

If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press this button to unlock the doors and boot temporarily.

In the event of an impact, the doors unlock automatically.

Emergency control

System which locks or unlocks the doors mechanically in the event of a malfunction of the battery or of the central locking.

In the event of a fault with the central locking, you must disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure the complete locking of the vehicle.

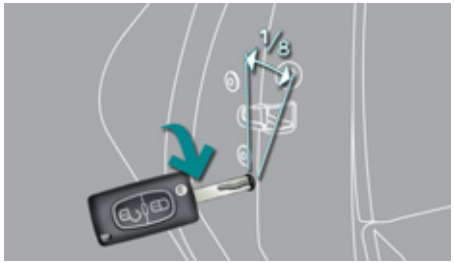
Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the right.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the left.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors

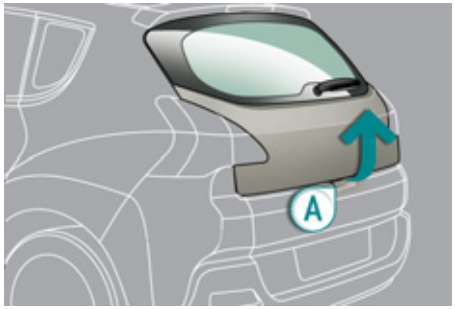


☞ Insert the key in the lock, located on the edge of the door, then turn it **one eighth of a turn**.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

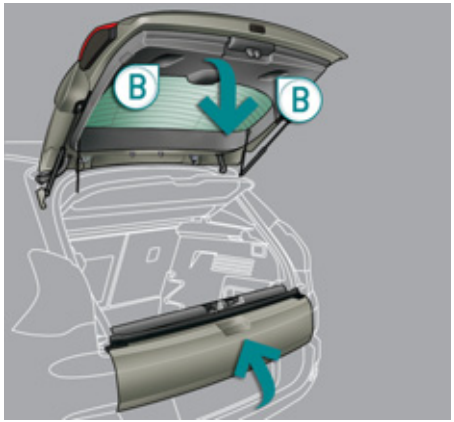
☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

BOOT



Opening

☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, press the handle **A** and raise the tailgate.

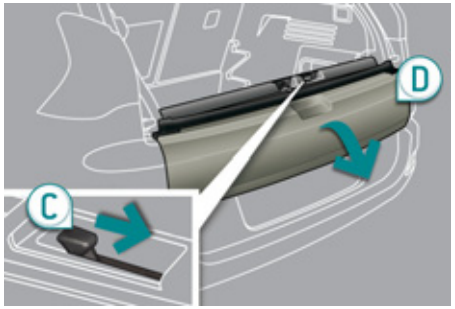


Closing

☞ Close the lower tailgate.

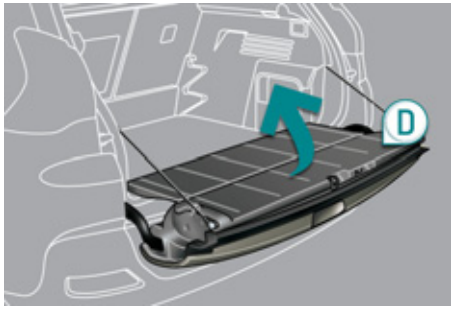
☞ Pull the handle **B** downwards to guide the tailgate.

LOWER TAILGATE



Opening

☞ Push the handle **C** to the right and tilt the tailgate **D** gently.



Closing

☞ Raise the tailgate **D**, push it fully to close it, check that it is secured correctly.

Before opening the boot, ensure that no one is within the radius of opening.

For reasons of safety, correct operation and compliance with regulations, do not drive with the boot and the lower tailgate open.

If the battery is disconnected, the boot cannot be opened.

Do not climb onto the lower tailgate and do not subject it to heavy knocks, it may be damaged.

Always close the lower tailgate and check that it is secured correctly before closing the boot.

When closing the lower tailgate, ensure that no person or object is in the proximity of the moving parts to avoid any risk of injury or damage.

Do not open the lower tailgate when a towbar is fitted.

Maximum authorised weight on the lower tailgate when open: **200 kg**.

FUEL TANK

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen. When the lamp first comes on, there is **approximately 6 litres** of fuel remaining.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. When driving, this audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**.

You must refuel to avoid running out of fuel.

If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer also to the "Checks" section.

With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Refuelling

A label affixed to the inside of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to be used according to your engine.

More than 5 litres of fuel must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

To fill the tank safely:

- **the engine must be switched off,**
- open the fuel filler flap,
- insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left,
- remove the cap and secure it on the hook, located on the inside of the flap,
- fill the tank, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.

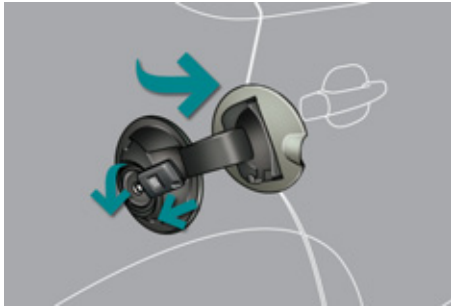
When refuelling is complete:

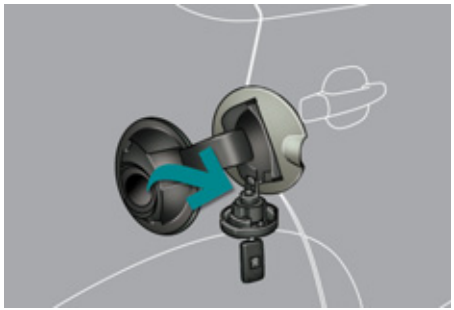
- put the cap back in place,
- turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- close the filler flap.

Operating fault

A malfunction of the fuel gauge is indicated by the return to zero of the fuel gauge needle.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.





The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is put back on the tank.

Opening the cap may trigger an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is completely normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines

SP95 E10

SP98

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 or E24 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % or 24 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (E100 type).

For Russia only, the use of RON 92 unleaded petrol is possible.

Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines

DIESEL

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Travelling abroad

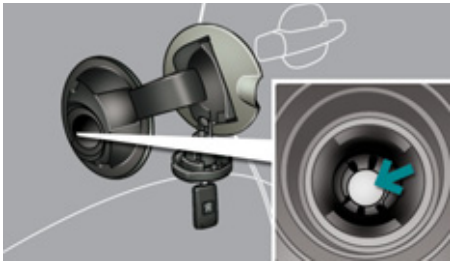
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

MISFUEL PREVENTION (DIESEL)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



Operation

When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

* According to country of sale.

LIGHTING CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the lighting progressively in relation to the climatic conditions and so improve the driver's visibility:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are installed to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

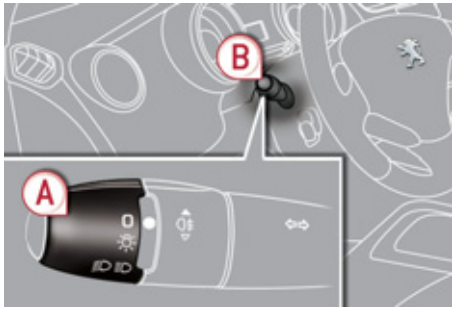
- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better visibility,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

Programming

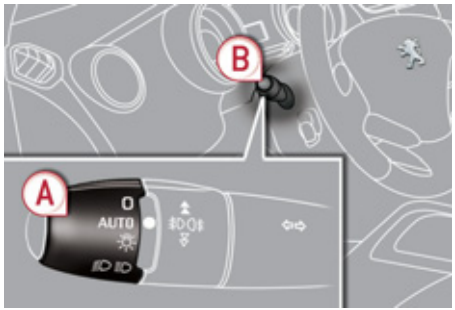
Various automatic lighting control modes are also available according to the following options:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic lighting,
- directional headlamps.

Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting



Manual controls

The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

0 Lighting off / daytime running lamps.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

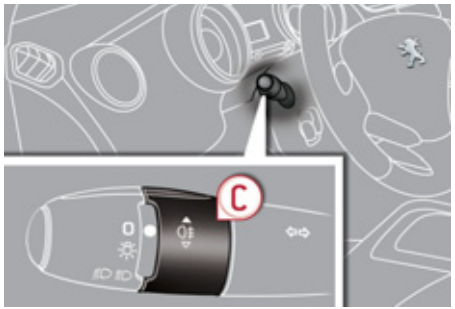
B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

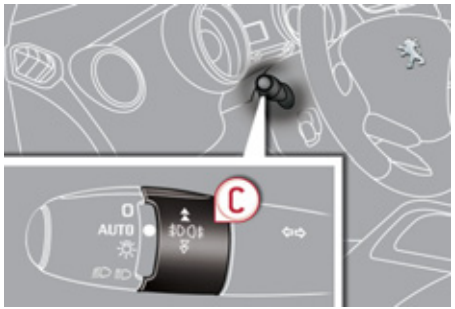
Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Model with rear foglamp only



Model with front and rear foglamps



C. Fog lamps selection ring.

Rear foglamp

This operates with dipped and main beam headlamps.

- To switch on the foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- To switch off the foglamp, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

When the lighting is switched on automatically (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on until the rear foglamp is switched off.

Front and rear foglamps

The rear foglamp operates with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

The front foglamps also operate with the sidelamps.

- To switch on the rear foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- To switch on the front foglamps, turn the ring **C** forwards again.
- To switch off the rear foglamp, turn the ring **C** rearwards.
- To switch off the front foglamps, turn the ring **C** rearwards again.

When the lighting is switched on automatically (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on until the rear foglamp is switched off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and the sidelamps will remain on.

In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamp are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers.

Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.

Lighting on audible warning

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off automatically, unless guide-me-home lighting is activated.

If the lighting is switched on manually after switching off the ignition, there is an audible signal when a front door is opened to warn the driver that they have forgotten to switch off the vehicle's lighting, with the ignition off.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

LED lamps

They come on when the engine is started.

Depending on the destination country, they are used for:

- daytime running lamps in day mode and sidelamps in night mode (they are brighter when daytime running lamps),

or

- sidelamps in day and night mode.

Programming



In countries in which this function is not imposed by regulations, with the vehicle stationary, use the navigator to activate or deactivate the function in the multifunction screen configuration menu.

The sidelamps and number plate lamps come on as well.

For countries where the function is a legal requirement, it is activated by default.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.

☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

EXTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated according to the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on



☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming



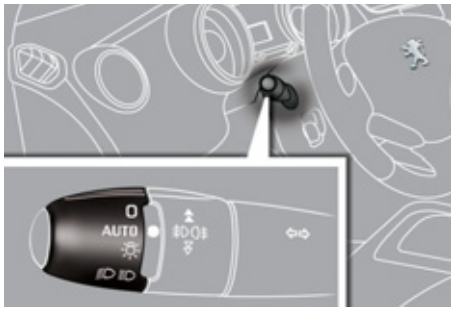
The lighting duration is selected via the vehicle configuration menu.

The duration of the welcome lighting is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message in the screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message in the screen.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Automatic "guide-me-home" lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated, under low ambient light the dipped beams headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Programming

Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the guide-me-home lighting, is set in the vehicle configuration menu.

MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HALOGEN HEADLAMPS



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

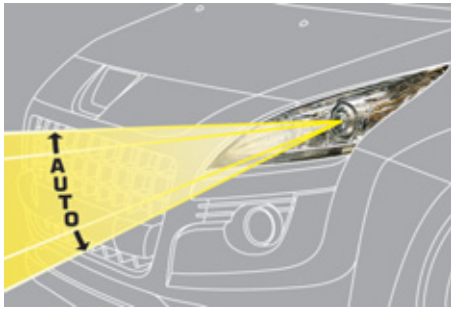
The initial setting is position **"0"**.

Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF THE XENON HEADLAMPS



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamps beam automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

If a malfunction occurs, do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beams to provide improved lighting of the side of the road when cornering.

The use of this function, from approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) and associated with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.

with directional lighting



without directional lighting



Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.

The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

WIPER CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

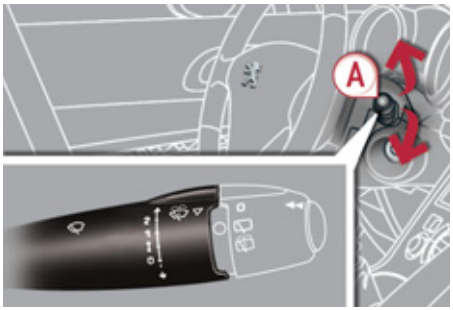
The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.

Programming

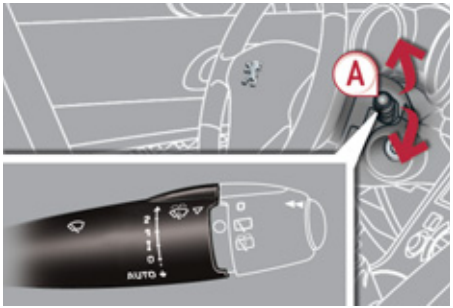
Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Model with intermittent wiping



Model with AUTO wiping



Manual controls

The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk.

2 Fast (heavy rain).

1 Normal (moderate rain).

I Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

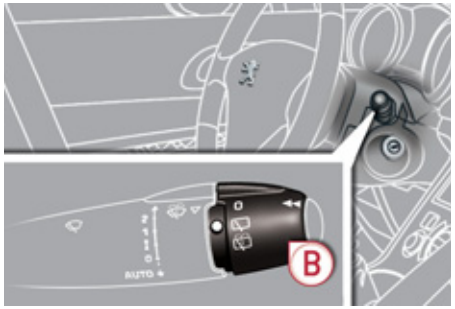
0 Off.

↓ Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO ↓ Automatic, then single wipe (see the corresponding section).

Rear wiper



If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

B. Rear wiper selection ring:

Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

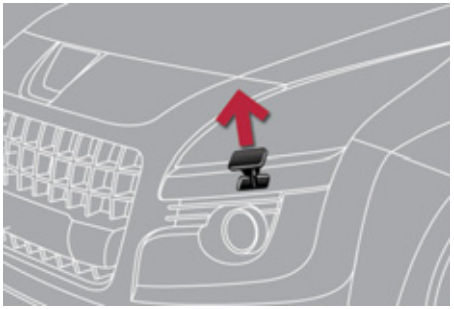
Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

Windscreen and headlamp wash



☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped beam headlamps are on**.

Screenwash/headlamp wash low level

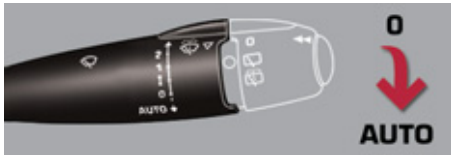
In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the minimum level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

The warning lamp is displayed when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.

Next time you stop, refill the screenwash / headlamp wash reservoir.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

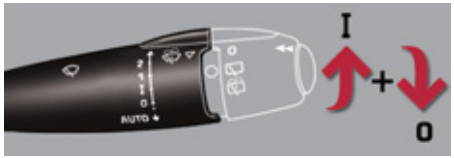
The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing the stalk downwards to the **"AUTO"** position.

It is accompanied by a message in the screen.



Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving the stalk upwards then returning it to position **"0"**.

It is accompanied by a message in the screen.

The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing the stalk downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

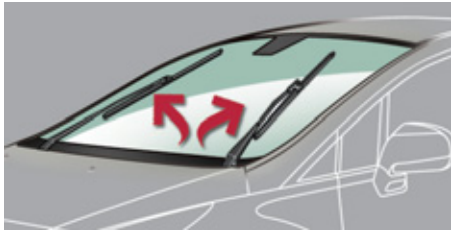
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, to avoid damaging the wiper blades, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

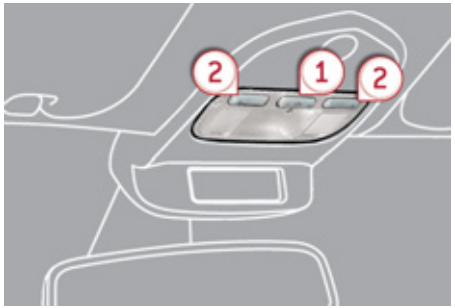
- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

To maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" type of wiper blades, it is advisable to:

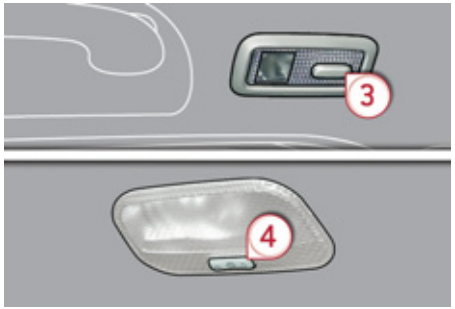
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

COURTESY LAMPS

1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**



3. **Rear side reading lamps**
4. **Rear courtesy lamp**



Take care not to place anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanently on.

With the "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

When the front courtesy lamp is in the "permanently on" position, the rear courtesy lamp will also come on, unless it is in the "permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, place it in the "permanently off" position.

Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Rear side reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, the first press of the reading lamp switch switches on the reading lamp in "permanently on" mode.

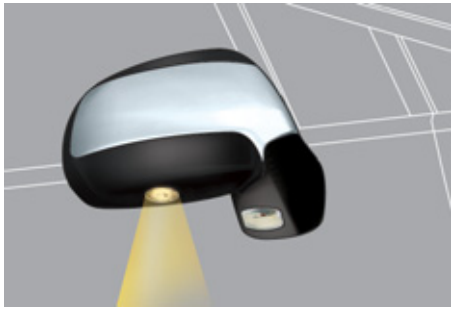
☞ Following a second press, it comes on:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is pressed, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

DOOR MIRROR SPOTLAMPS



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on

The spotlamps come on:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when you remove the key from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control.

Switching off

They are timed to go off automatically.

INTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the passenger compartment lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It operates with the automatic illumination of headlamps.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The courtesy lamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The interior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time or when one of the doors is opened.

Programming

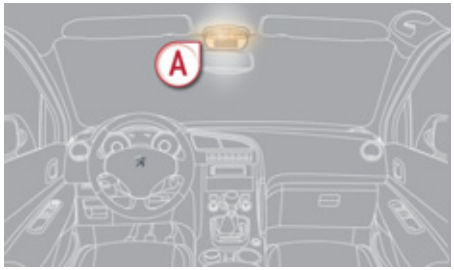


The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

The duration of the welcome lighting is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

INTERIOR MOOD LIGHTING

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



Switching on

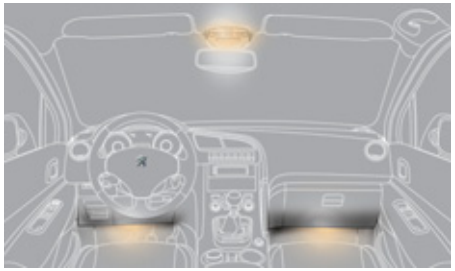
At night, the front courtesy lamp mood lamp **A** comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

FOOTWELL LIGHTING

The soft lighting provided by the footwell lamps improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



Activation

Its operation is identical to that of the courtesy lamps. The lighting comes on when one of the doors is opened.

BOOT LAMP



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

Different lighting times are available:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

TORCH



Portable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.

For the torch function, refer to the "Fittings" section.

Operation

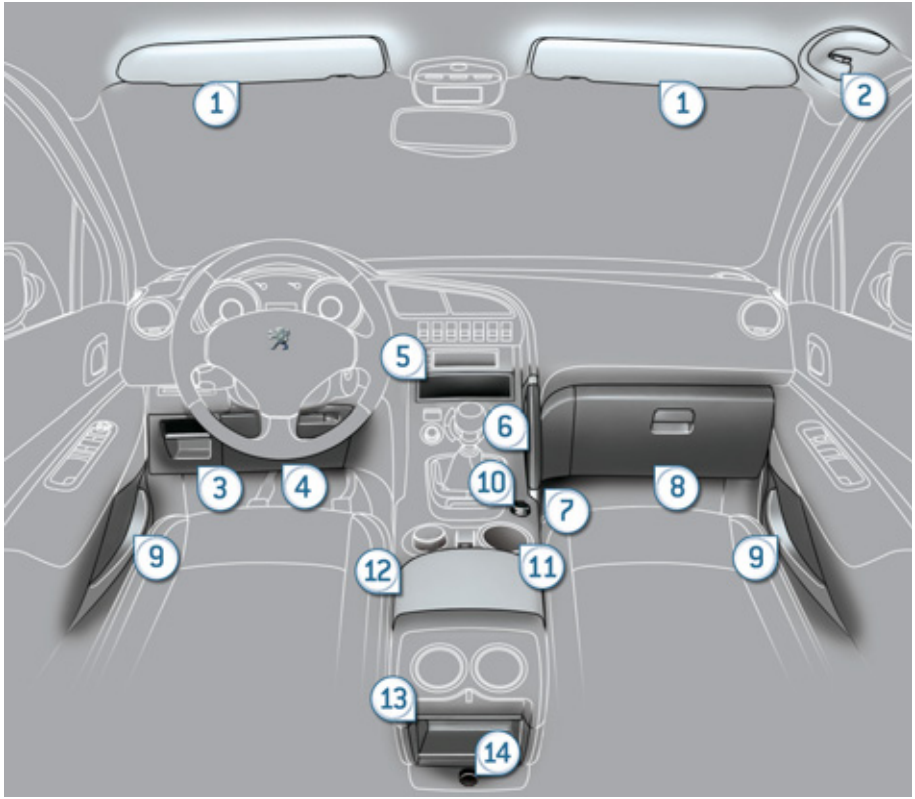
Once engaged firmly in its location, it comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

It operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.

It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and recharges while you are driving.

Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.

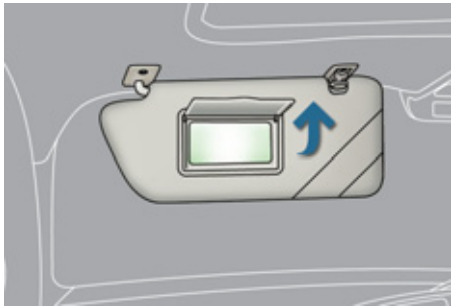
Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal single-use batteries.



INTERIOR FITTINGS

1. Sun visor
2. Grab handle with coat hook
3. Storage compartment
4. Storage compartment under the steering wheel
5. Storage compartment
6. Console handle
7. Storage compartment with net
8. Illuminated glove box
9. Door pockets
10. Front 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
11. Cup holder
12. Front armrest with storage compartment
13. Storage compartment
14. Rear 12 V accessory socket (120 W)

SUN VISOR

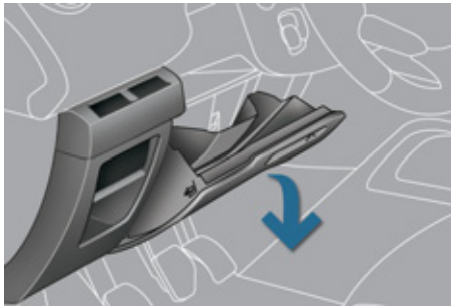


Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated courtesy mirror.

☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is lit automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

DRIVER'S STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



Storage box

This has storage areas for the handbook pack, ...

☞ To open, pull the handle then tilt the box.

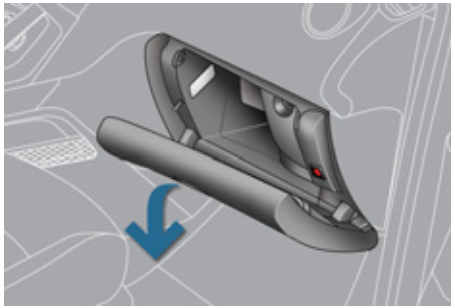
Card holder

This can be used for a toll payment ticket or parking card, for example.

Coin storage

Storage

ILLUMINATED GLOVE BOX



This has storage areas, audio sockets for a portable player and a location for the SIM card (only with Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)), ...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

The lamp comes on when the lid is opened.

To connect a portable player or a SIM card, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

FRONT ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the driver and front passenger.

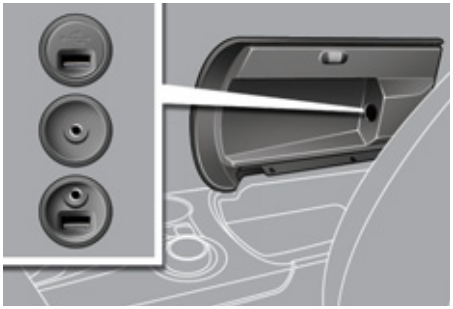
☞ Raise the cover on the left.

Storage



A ventilation outlet distributes cooled air.

USB PLAYER - PLUG



This connection box consists of a jack auxiliary socket and/or a USB port.

It permits the connection of portable equipment, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.

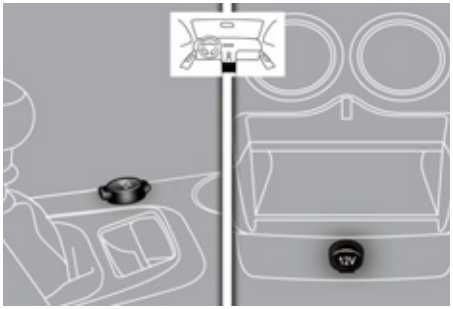
It reads the audio file formats (mp3, ogg, wma, wav...) which are transmitted to your audio equipment and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio equipment control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

When in use connected to the USB port, the portable equipment charges automatically.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

12 V ACCESSORY SOCKETS

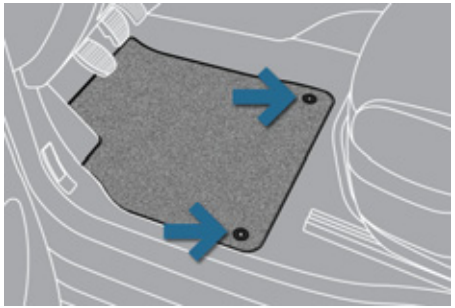


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 Watts), remove the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

Exceeding the maximum power could result in damage to your accessory.

MATS

Removable carpet protection.



Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

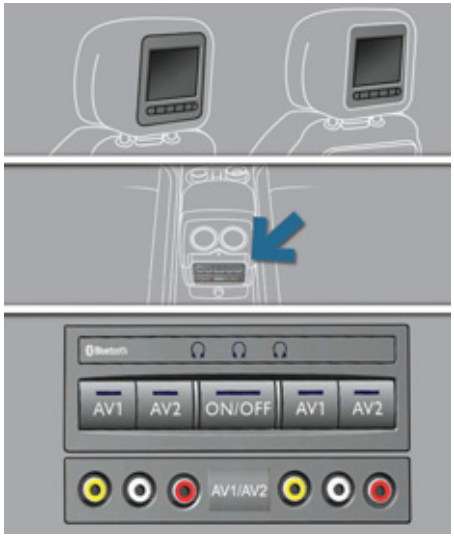
- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.

REAR MULTIMEDIA



Multimedia system permitting the connection of any external portable system: iPod Video, games consoles, DVD player, …



Two separate **video** sources can be connected via the RCA connectors (yellow).



The video is displayed in two 7" screens, integrated in the head restraints.



Two separate **audio** sources can be connected via the RCA connectors (red and white).



The audio is heard through two wireless headphones with Bluetooth technology which operate with rechargeable batteries.

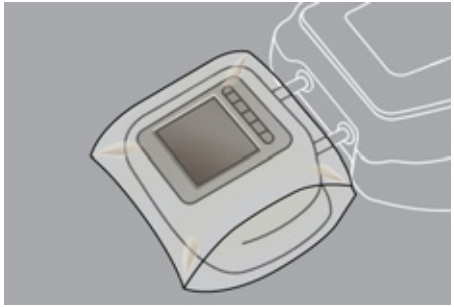
The **A/B** button allows you to pair the headphones with the screen: **A** left-hand side, **B** right-hand side.

You have a 12 V charger with two outputs permitting simultaneous charging of both headphones.

It is also possible to connect a 3rd set of Bluetooth headphones.

Set-up

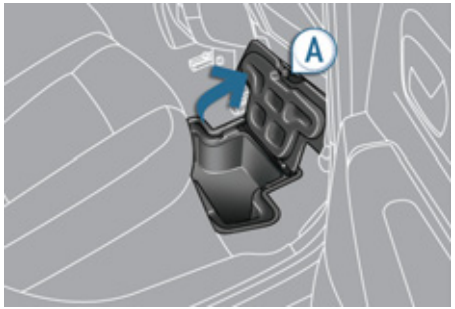
- With the engine running, connect your portable system to the RCA connectors (e.g. with AV1 on the left).
- Press the system's ON/OFF button, the indicator lamp comes on and the AV1 indicator lamps come on.
- Press and hold the ON/OFF button on the headphones, the indicator lamp on the headphones flashes in blue.
- Press and hold the system's ON/OFF button, the pairing with the headphones is complete when the blue indicator lamps on the headphones and on the system (in the shape of headphones) are on continuously.
- Press the ON/OFF buttons in the screens if you have a video source.
- Start playing your portable system.



If your seat is in the table position, position a cover to avoid damaging the screen.

These covers also conceal each screen.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS UNDER THE REAR FOOTWELLS



Depending on the configuration, the vehicle has storage compartments under the footwells, located forward of the outer rear seats. Access is via clipped flaps with a handle **A**.

REAR ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the rear passengers.

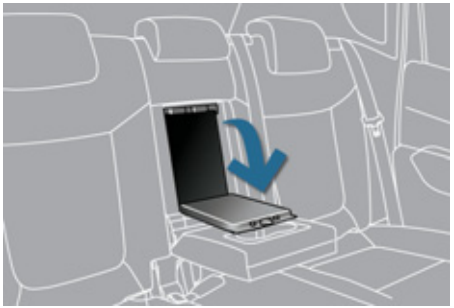


☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

The armrest incorporates two cup holders.

SKI FLAP

Arrangement for storing and transporting long objects.



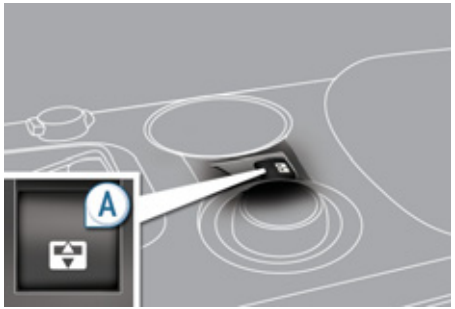
Opening

☞ Lower the rear armrest.
☞ Pull the flap handle downwards.
☞ Lower the flap.
☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

PANORAMIC SUNROOF

Component which has a tinted glass panoramic surface to increase the light and visibility in the passenger compartment.

Fitted with an electric blind in several sections to improve temperature and noise related comfort.



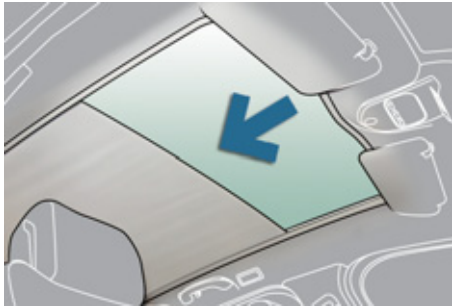
One-touch electric blind

There are two ways of opening and closing.

Manual mode

☞ Pull or press control **A** gently, without going past the point of resistance.

The blind stops when you release the control.



Automatic mode

☞ Pull or press control **A** firmly, going beyond the point of resistance.

One press opens or closes the blind completely.

Pressing the control again stops the blind.

Safety anti-pinch

In automatic mode and at the end of its travel, if the blind meets an obstacle while closing it stops and moves back slightly.

Reinitialisation: if the blind's supply is cut off while it is moving, the safety anti-pinch must be reinitialised.

☞ Press the control until the blind is fully closed.

☞ Continue to press for at least 3 seconds. A slight movement of the blind will then be noticeable, confirming the reinitialisation.

If the blind re-opens during a closing manoeuvre, and immediately after it stops.

☞ Pull the control until the blind is fully open.

☞ Press the control until the blind is fully closed.

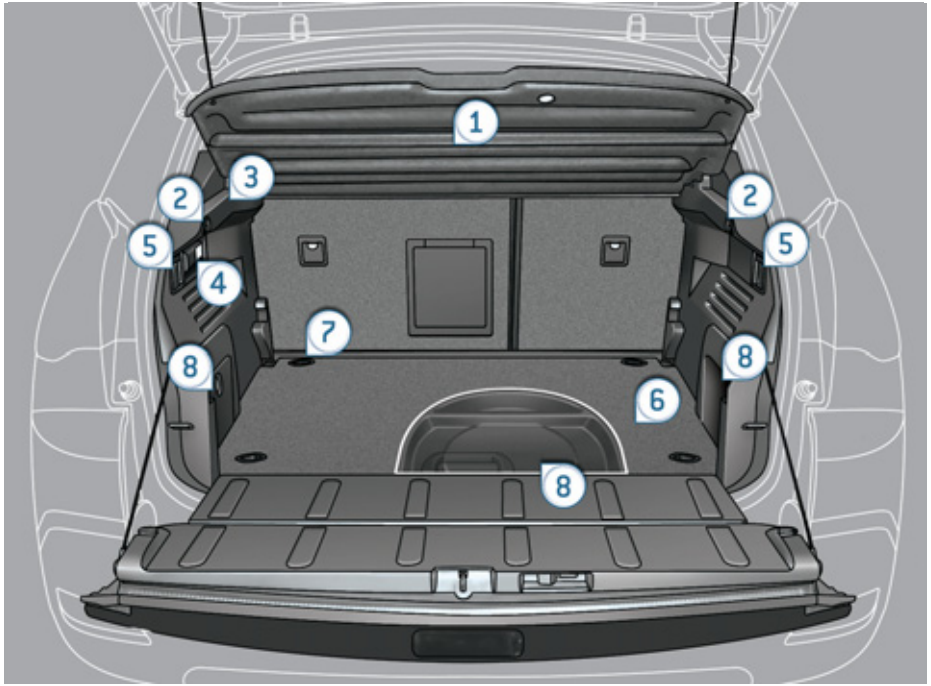
The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

If the blind meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the blind control, he must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the blind.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.

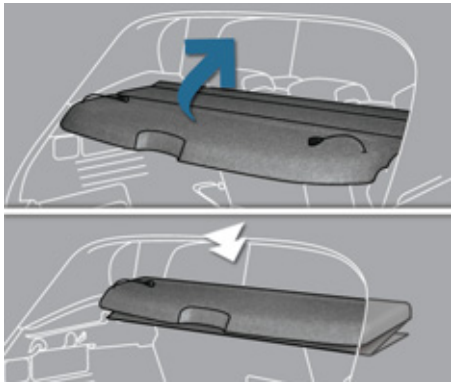
Be aware of children when operating the blind.



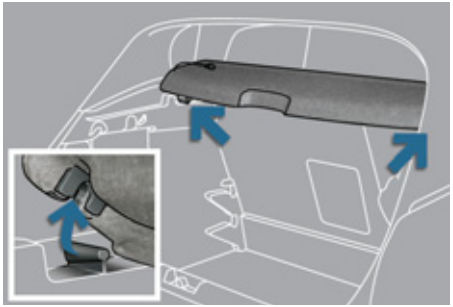
BOOT FITTINGS

1. Load space cover
2. Hooks
3. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
4. Torch
5. Rear seats folding controls
6. Adjustable boot (3 position floor)
7. Stowing rings on the floor
8. Storage trays

Rear parcel shelf

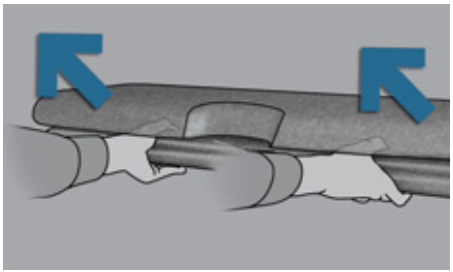


This consists of three sections which can be folded back on each other.



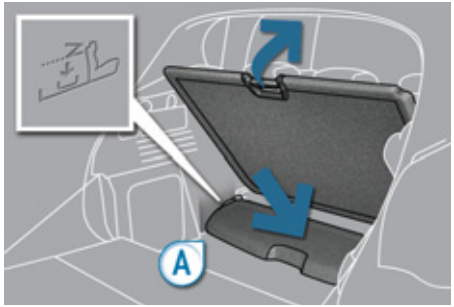
To fold it:

- unhook the two cords,
- fold it concertina-style to the rear seats.



To remove it:

- fold the rear parcel shelf as described above,
- unclip the fixings on the left and on the right by pushing gently,
- place your hands as shown on the illustration then pull the assembly towards you,



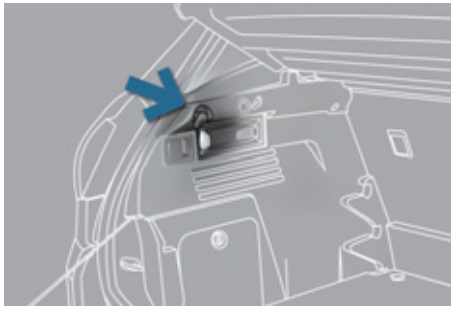
To store it at the bottom of the boot:

- remove the rear parcel shelf as described above,
- place the floor at an angle,
- place the rear parcel shelf in its location (recess marked **A**), at bottom of the boot,
- the rear parcel shelf will be protected if you place the floor in the intermediate position.

To put it back in place:

- take hold of the rear parcel shelf with both hands then place it on its support,
- unfold it to the boot pillars,
- hook the two cords,
- if necessary, press on the top of the rear parcel shelf, on the left and on the right, to engage the fixings.

Hooks

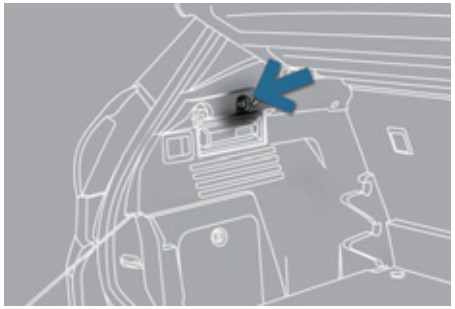


The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.

When changing a wheel

The hooks facilitate access to the spare wheel, retaining the boot carpet by means of the two cords.

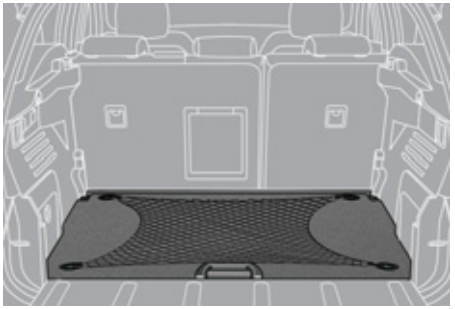
12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.

☞ Turn the key to the ignition on position.

Luggage retaining net



Hooked onto the stowing rings on the movable boot floor, the luggage retaining net available as an accessory enables you to secure your luggage.

Observe the loads indicated on the side of the boot, in accordance with the position of the movable floor.

For safety reasons in case of sharp braking, we recommend that heavy objects are placed on the floor as close as possible to the back of the rear seats.

Storage box

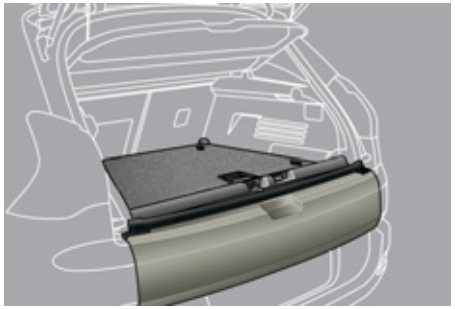


☞ Raise the boot carpet, hooking the two cords on the hooks, then gain access to the storage box.

Depending on the configuration, this has areas for storing:

- a box of spare bulbs,
- a first aid kit,
- a tyre repair kit,
- two warning triangles,
- ...

Adjustable boot floor

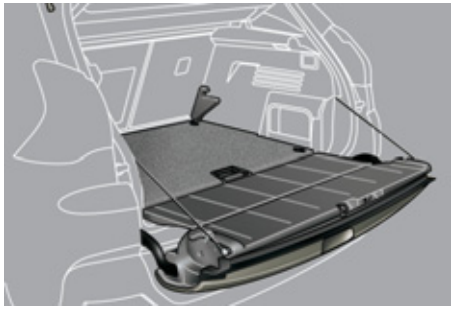


This three position floor allows you to optimise the volume of the boot by means of the guides placed on the sides:

- High position (50 kg max): the floor is level with the closed lower tailgate.

  You can load objects while keeping an area protected and isolated.
- Intermediate position (100 kg max): the floor is level with the open lower tailgate.

  You obtain a flat floor to the front seats when the rear seats are in the retracted position.
- Low position (150 kg max): maximum boot volume.





To change the height of the floor:

☞ Push the floor fully forwards then, with the help of the support stops **A**, move the floor to the position required.



To place and support the floor at an angle:

☞ From the high position, raise the floor towards the load space cover.

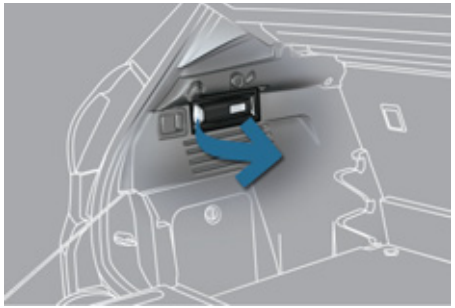
☞ Do not hesitate to pass the two retractable stops then place the floor back on these two stops.

The floor is equipped with four stowing rings to secure your luggage, observing the loads indicated (in the boot).

Torch

This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to illuminate the boot or as a torch.

For the boot lighting function, refer to the "Visibility" section.



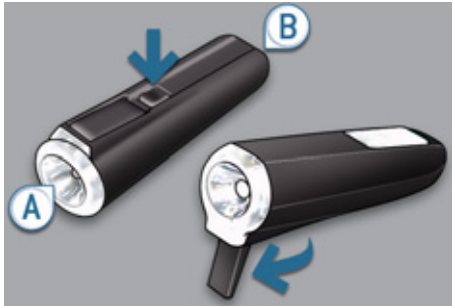
Operation

This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.

It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.

Observe the polarities when fitting the batteries.

Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal single-use batteries.



Use

- Extract the torch from its location pulling the side of the torch **A**.
- Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Storing

- Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the narrow part **B**.

  If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

It the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

Rear side blinds

Fitted on the rear windows, these protect your young children from the sun.



- Pull the blind by the central tab.
- Position the blind attachment on the hook.

GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of PEUGEOT main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel in the **outer rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearwards-facing"** up to the age of 2,
- **"forwards-facing"** over the age of 2.

* The rules for carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT



"Rearwards-facing"

When a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, it is essential that the passenger airbag is deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.



"Forwards-facing"

When a "forwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the fully back and highest position with the seat back upright and leave the passenger's airbag activated.

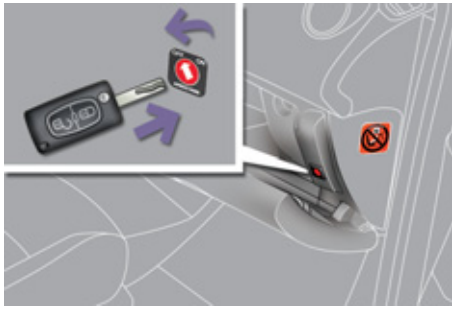
Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.



Passenger seat in the fully back and highest position.



Passenger airbag OFF



For more information on de-activating the airbag, refer to the "Safety" section then "Airbags".

Label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor

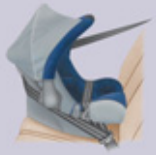


AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това можеда причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug aldrig en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde der er beskyttet af en aktiv airbag. Død eller alvorlig skade på barnet kan forekomme.
DE	Verwenden Sie NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder Babyschale gegen die Fahrtrichtung bei AKTIVIERTEM Airbag, TOD oder ERNSTHAFTE VERLETZUNGEN können die Folge sein.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA EL SISTEMA DE RETENCIÓN PARA NIÑOS DE ESPALDAS AL SENTIDO DE LA CIRCULACIÓN SOBRE UN ASIENTO PROTEGIDO CON UN COJÍN INFLABLE FRONTAL (AIRBAG) ACTIVADO. ESTO PUEDE CAUSAR LA MUERTE DEL BEBE O HERIRLO GRAVEMENTE.
ET	Ärge kasutage kunagi lapse turvatooli seljaga sõidusuunas sõiduki istmel mis on kaitstud AKTIVEERITUD TURVAPADJAGA. See võib põhjustada lapsele RASKEID VIGASTUSI või SURMA.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.

HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést olyan ülésen, amely AKTIVÁLT ÁLLAPOTÚ (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL van védve. Ez a gyermek halálát vagy súlyos sérülését okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NAV PIEĻAUJAMS uzstādīt uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera vietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND ERNSTIG OF DODELIJK GEWOND raken.
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji «tyłem do kierunku jazdy»na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM.W przeciwnym razie dziecko narażone będzie na ŚMIERĆ lub BARDZO POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA w momenicie wyzwolenia poduszki powietrznej
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada, num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY nepoužívajte na prednom sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNYM AIRBAGOM detské zadržiavacie zariadenie umiestnené v proti smere jazdy. Môže to spôsobiť SMRŤ, alebo VÁŽNE ZRANENIE DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol i ett säte skyddat av en AKTIV AIRBAG framför det. Det kan orsaka ALLVARLIGA eller DÖDLIGA skador på barnet.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

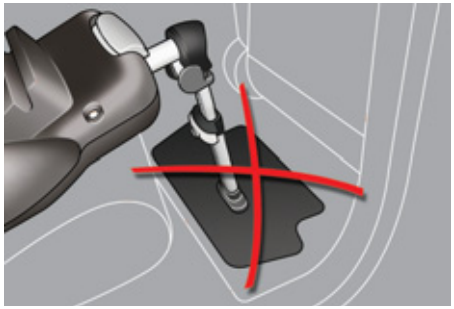
CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

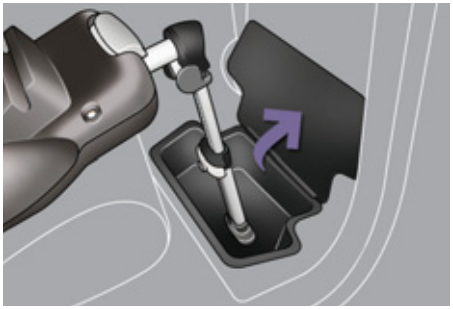
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg		Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	**L1** "RÖMER/BRITAX Baby-Safe Plus". Installed in the rearwards-facing position.		**L2** "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX".
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg			
	**L5** "KLIPPAN Optima". From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.		**L6** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be secured using the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

INSTALLING CHILD SEATS WITH A STAY

Precautions must be taken when installing a child seat with a stay (or drop down leg). In particular, take care when there is a storage compartment present in the rear footwells.



Do not place the stay on the storage compartment cover, it could break in a serious impact. Where the range of adjustment for the stay allows, we suggest two other possibilities for installation.



At the bottom of the storage compartment

If the stay is long enough, you can place it in contact with the bottom of the storage compartment. Remove all objects before installing the stay.



Outside the storage compartment area

One other possibility, where the stay is long enough and can be inclined sufficiently (while observing the recommendations in the fitting instructions for the child seat), is to position the stay so that it is in contact with the floor away from the storage compartment. Remember to use the adjustment of the seat position to obtain a satisfactory position for the stay which is away from the storage compartment.

If you cannot fit the stay in the way described, we recommend that you do not fit a child seat with a stay in this position.

INSTALLING CHILD SEATS ATTACHED USING THE SEAT BELT

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in accordance with the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat	Weight of the child and indicative age			
	Under 13 kg (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to approx 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) 1 to 3 years approx	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) 3 to 6 years approx	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) 6 to 10 years approx
Front passenger seat **(c)** with height adjuster 	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
Front passenger seat **(c)** without height adjuster	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
Outer rear seats 	**U***	**U***	**U***	**U***
Centre rear seat 	**L1**	**L2**	**L5, L6**	**L5, L6**

a: universal child seat, child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using a seat belt.

b: group 0, from birth to 10 kg. Shell seats and baby carriers cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

c: consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved, "rearwards-facing" and/or "forwards-facing".

U (R): as for **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position and as far back as possible.

L-: only the child seats indicated can be installed on the seat concerned (according to country).

X: seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

* Child seats **with a stay** (or drop down leg) should be fitted to your vehicle with care. See "Fitting a child seat with a stay" for more information.

ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

For optimum installation of the "forwards-facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.

If the head restraint has to be removed, ensure that it is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Children under the age of 10 must not travel in the "forwards-facing" position on the front passenger seat, unless the rear seats are already occupied by other children, cannot be used or are absent.

Deactivate the passenger airbag when a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the front seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".

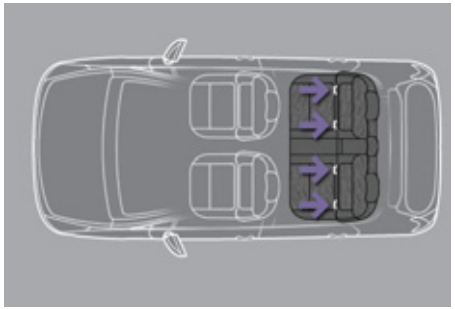
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

"ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulations**.

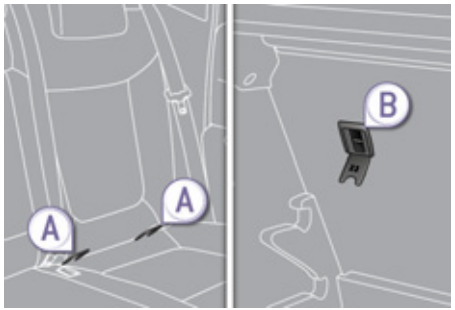
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.



There are three rings for each seat.

- Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label.

- A ring **B**, behind the seat, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.



This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are easily secured on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To attach this strap, raise the vehicle seat's head restraint then pass the hook between its rods. Then fix the hook on ring **B** and tighten the upper strap.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

For information regarding the ISOFIX child seats which can be installed in your vehicle, refer to the table showing the locations for installing ISOFIX child seats.

ISOFIX CHILD SEAT
Recommended by PEUGEOT and approved for your vehicle

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed only in the forwards-facing position.
Fitted with an upper strap to be secured on the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER.
Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.
Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the back of the seat.
Can be installed forwards-facing by attaching it to the seat using a three-point seat belt

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.

Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

LOCATIONS FOR INSTALLING ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Shell**		**"rearwards-facing"**			**"rearwards-facing"**		**"forwards-facing"**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat 	**X**		**X**			**X**		**X**		
Outer rear seats 	**X**		**IL-SU***			**IL-SU***		**IUF* IL-SU***		
Centre rear seat 	**X**		**X**			**X**		**X**		

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orwards-facing" secured using the top belt.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- "rearwards-facing" fitted with a top belt or a stay,
- "forwards-facing" fitted with a stay,
- a shell seat fitted with an upper strap or a stay.

For advice on securing the top belt, refer to the section on "Isofix mountings".

X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or shell for the weight group indicated.

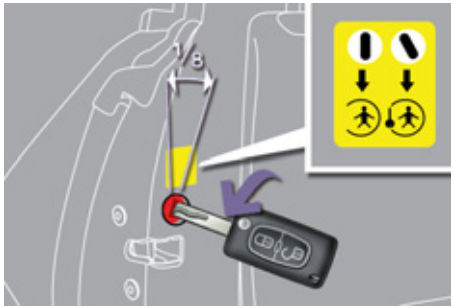
* Child seats **with a stay** (or drop down leg) should be fitted to your vehicle with care. Refer to the section on fitting a child seat with a stay.

MANUAL CHILD LOCK

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.

The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

Locking



☞ Turn the red control one eighth of a turn using the ignition key as shown in the label on the door. **Check that the lock is on**.

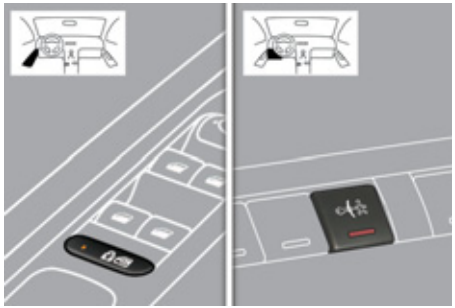
Unlocking

☞ Turn the red control one eighth of a turn using the ignition key.

ELECTRIC CHILD LOCK

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

Switching on



☞ With the ignition on, press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is on.

This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off.

It is still possible to open the doors from the outside and operate the rear electric windows from the driver's control panel.

Switching off

☞ With the ignition on, press this button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is off.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

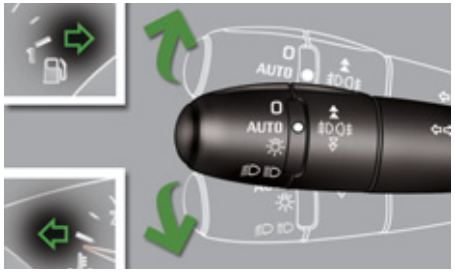
This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.

Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



☞ Lower the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the left.

☞ Raise the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the right.

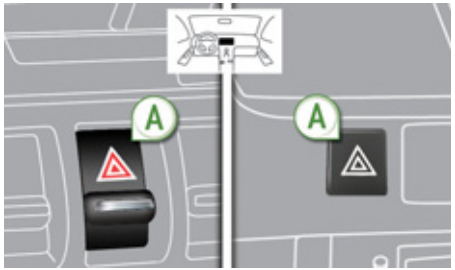
If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

"Motorway" function

Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash 3 times.

HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



☞ Tilt or press button **A**, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

HORN

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press one of the spokes of the steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following cases:

- immediate danger,
- overtaking a cyclist or pedestrian,
- when approaching an area where there is no visibility.

TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION

System which automatically checks the pressure of the tyres while driving.



Sensors fitted in each valve trigger a warning in the event of malfunction (speed above 12 mph (20 km/h)).

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor.

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for the driver to be vigilant or to drive responsibly.

Under-inflated tyre

This warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal, to identify the wheel concerned.

☞ Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible.

This check must be carried out when the tyres are cold.

Puncture

STOP

The **STOP** warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen identifying the wheel concerned.

☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, avoiding any sudden movement of the steering wheel and the brakes.

☞ Change the damaged wheel (punctured or very deflated tyre), and have the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

Sensor(s) not detected or faulty

A message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal, to identify the wheel or wheels which are not detected or to indicate a fault in the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to replace the faulty sensor(s).

This message is also displayed when one of the wheels is away from the vehicle (being repaired) or when one or more wheels without a sensor are fitted.

All repairs and changing of tyres on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If, when changing a tyre, you install a wheel which is not detected by your vehicle (example: fitting of snow tyres), you must have the system re-initialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

This system does not avoid the need to have the tyre pressures checked regularly (refer to the "Identification markings" section) to ensure that the optimum dynamic performance of the vehicle is maintained and prevent premature wear of the tyres, particularly in arduous driving conditions (heavy load, high speed).

The tyre pressures must be checked cold, at least once a month. Remember to check the pressure of the spare wheel.

The tyre under-inflation detection system may experience temporary interference due to electromagnetic emissions on a frequency close to that used by the system.

ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAMME (ESC)

Electronic Stability Programme (ESC: Electronic Stability Control) incorporating the following systems:

- the anti-lock braking system (ABS) and the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- the emergency braking assistance,
- the anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- the dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and provides improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-skid regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Operation

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



When this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the ABS, which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



When this warning lamp comes on, coupled with the **STOP** warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD), which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In both cases, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

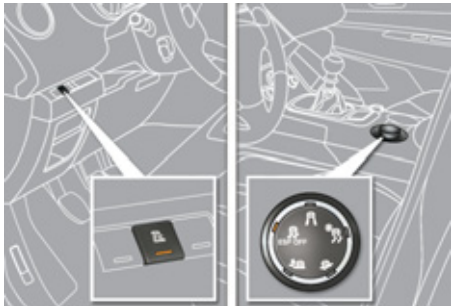


When changing wheels (tyres and rims), make sure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.



In emergency braking, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.



Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Activation

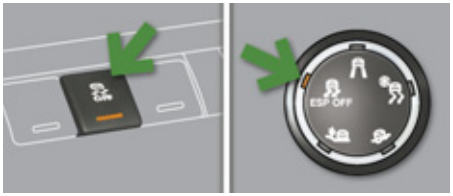
This system is activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

It comes into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the DSC system, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.

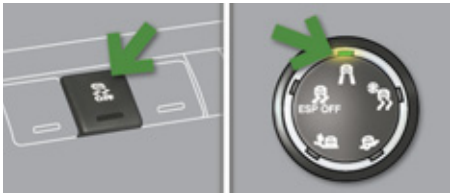


☞ Press the **"OFF"** button or, according to version, turn the dial to this position.

This warning lamp and the indicator lamp in the button or in the dial come on: the DSC system no longer acts on the operation of the engine.

Reactivation

The system is reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).



☞ Press the **"OFF"** button again or, according to version, turn the dial to this position, to reactivate it manually.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates a malfunction of the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The DSC system offers exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct functioning of the system depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

After an impact, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

GRIP CONTROL

Special patented traction control system which improves traction on snow, mud and sand.

This system is combined with all-season M+S (Mud and Snow: 215/60 R16) tyres which offer an excellent compromise between safety, grip and traction.

This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during touring use).

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. The electronics will ensure optimum management of the various parameters. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

Each time the ignition is switched off, the system returns to standard mode (ESP).

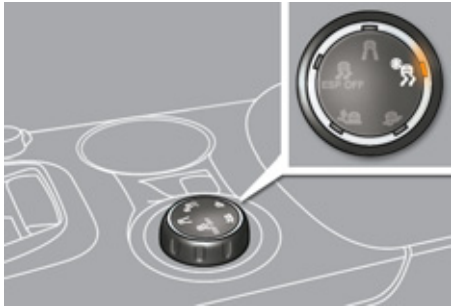
A message appears in the multifunction screen or in the instrument panel screen confirming the mode selected



Normal mode

Standard mode which is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

☞ Place the dial in this position.



Snow mode

Mode which adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to provide the best acceleration possible for the grip available.

☞ Place the dial in this position.



Mud mode

Mode which, when moving off allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to pass as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.



☞ Place the dial in this position.



Sand mode

Mode which allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.



☞ Place the dial in this position.

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

ESP OFF mode



☞ Place the dial in this position.

This mode is active up to 30 mph (50 km/h).

Driving advice

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to drive on other less passable terrain occasionally.

However, it does not permit all-terrain activities such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, ...) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

SEAT BELTS



Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

Fastening

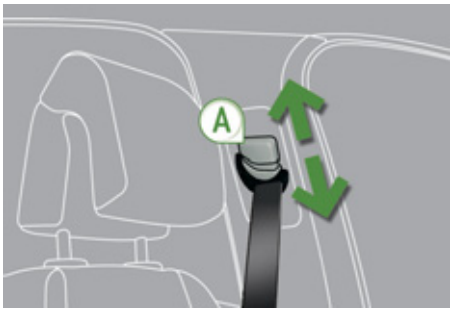


- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



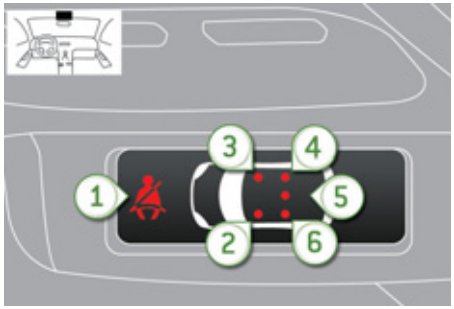
- ☞ To adjust the anchorage point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it until you find a notch.

Front seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display



1. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
3. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp **2** or **3** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt with force limiter (with the exception of the centre rear seat).

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

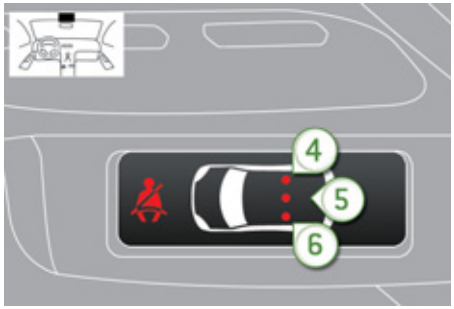
Seat belt unfastened warning lamp



This warning lamp comes on on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display



When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **4**, **5** and **6** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.

When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamp **4**, **5** or **6** comes on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling firmly on the strap and releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

AIRBAGS

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the rear centre passenger).

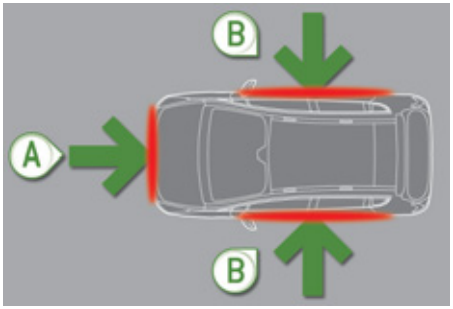
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Deployment of the airbag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

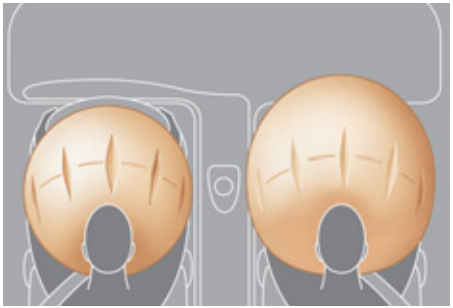
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

The airbags are deployed simultaneously, unless the passenger's front airbag is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.

- **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- Turn it to the **"OFF"** position.
- Then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



According to version, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rear facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If these warning lamps come on or flash, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

If even one of the two airbag warning lamps comes on continuously, do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lateral airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the front, in the outer side of the seat back frame.

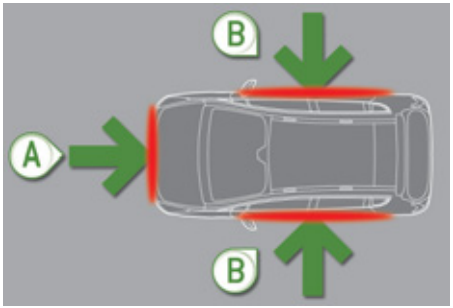


Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.

B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Refer to the "Accessories" section.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

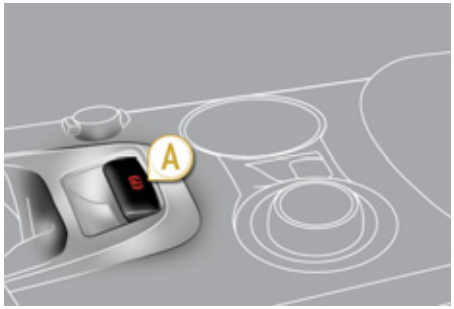
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



The electric parking brake combines 2 operational modes:

- **Automatic application/release**

  Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (activated by default),
- **Manual application/release**

  The parking brake can be applied / released manually by pulling control lever **A**.

AUTO P OFF

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, the automatic mode is deactivated.

Programming the mode

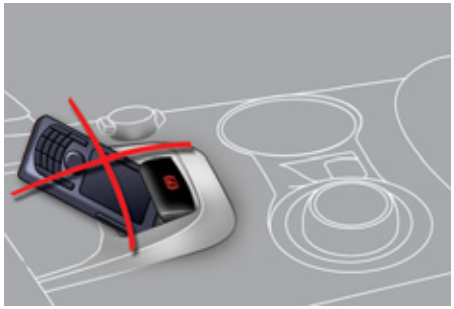
Depending on the country of registration of the vehicle, the automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.



Activation / deactivation of this function is possible by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

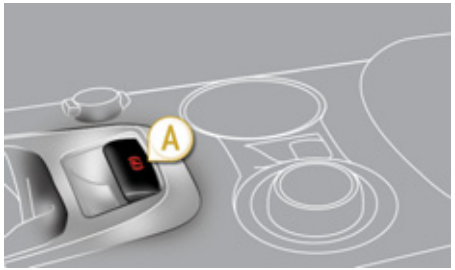
The parking brake is then applied and released manually. When the driver's door is opened, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the brake is not applied.

Deactivation is recommended in particularly cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...). Refer to the "Manual release" paragraph.



Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone, ...) behind the electric brake control.

Manual application



With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** on the control lever **A**.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A**,
- display of the message "Handbrake on".

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a beep is heard and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied, unless the selector lever is in position **P** (Park) in the case of an automatic gearbox.

Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on, not flashing.

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** on the **brake pedal** or the accelerator, **pull then release** the control lever **A**.

Full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the braking warning lamp and of the warning lamp **P** in the the control lever **A** going off,
- display of the message "Handbrake off".

If you pull the control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on the control lever **A**, until you see the message "Handbrake on" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on is variable in its effect (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing).

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Handbrake on".

An audible signal will confirm to you the application/ release of your electric parking brake.

Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on (not flashing).

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- **Manual gearbox:** press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- **Electronic gear control gearbox**: select position **A**, **M** or **R** then press on the accelerator pedal.
- **Automatic gearbox:** select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press on the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the braking warning lamp and of the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,



- display of the message "Handbrake off".

When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

To immobilise the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** on control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

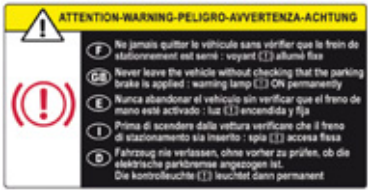
- illumination of the braking warning lamp and the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Handbrake on".

When the driver's door is opened, an audible signal heard and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied, unless the selector lever is in position **P** (Park) in the case of an automatic gearbox.

Label on the door panel



Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on, not flashing.

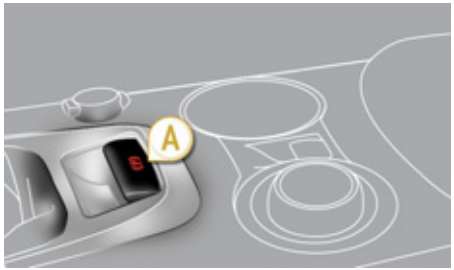
Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** control lever **A**. The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamp in the control lever **A** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel going off and the display of the message "Handbrake off".

If a parking brake fault occurs **while applied** or if the battery runs flat, an emergency release is always possible.

EMERGENCY BRAKING



In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) **a continuous pull on the control lever A will stop the vehicle**.

The dynamic stability control (DSC) provides stability during emergency braking.

If there is a fault with the emergency braking, one of the following messages will be displayed:

- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".

OFF

If a failure of the DSC system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed.

In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull release" actions on control lever **A**.

The emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

Emergency release



Front left seat moved back fully.

In the event of the electric parking brake malfunctioning or the battery running flat, an emergency manual device can release the parking brake.

- Immobilise the vehicle (or keep it stationary, if the brake pedal is pressed), with the engine running, by engaging first gear (manual gearbox), position **P** (automatic gearbox) or **M** or **R** (6-speed electronic gear control gearbox).
- Switch off the engine but leave the ignition on. If it is impossible to immobilise the vehicle, do not operate the control and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop urgently.
- Fetch the two vehicle blocks and the release device, located under the boot carpet (see "Changing a wheel" in the "Practical information" section).
- Immobilise the vehicle by placing blocks in front and behind one of the front wheels.
- Slide the front left-hand seat back as far as possible.
- Lift up the floor plug **B** in the carpet under the seat.
- Pierce the protective cover **C** on the tube **D** with the release device.
- Place the release device in the tube **D**.
- Turn the release device **clockwise. For safety reasons**, it is **essential** to continue turning the device as far as it will go. The parking brake is released.
- Remove the release device and store it with the blocks in the toolbox.

The operation of the parking brake reinitialises when the ignition is switched off then on again. If the reinitialisation of the parking brake proves impossible, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The subsequent time required for application may be longer than during normal operation.

For safety reasons, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible to replace the protective cover.

Following an emergency unlocking, immobilisation of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed once the manual emergency release has been deployed and the manual control does not allow the re-application of your parking brake.

Take no action, either on the control lever **A**, or stopping or starting the engine while the release device is engaged.

Take care not to allow moisture or dust in the proximity of the protective cover.

HILL START ASSIST

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This system only operates when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in particular conditions on a slope,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a momentarily when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in position **A** or **M** on an electronic gear control gearbox,
- provided you are in position **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.

Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to exit the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp (and the warning lamp **P** in the lever of the electric parking brake) are on fixed (not flashing).



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Operating faults

If the electric parking brake fault warning lamp comes on together with one or more of the warning lamps presented in these tables, place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged) and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake can only be used manually.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the control. - Hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and the manual application are still available.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition. ☞ Pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check the switching on of the electric parking brake warning lamps. The application is slower than during normal operation. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Pull the control and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it. If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work. Place the vehicle on level ground and have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

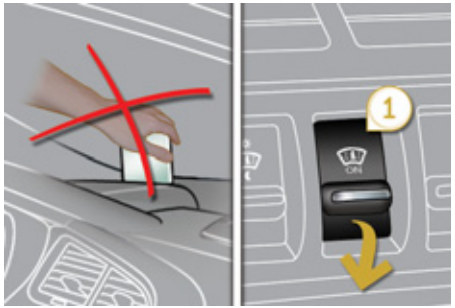
Situations	Consequences
Display of the message **"Parking brake control fault - auto parking brake activated"** and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing	- Only the automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration functions are available. - The manual application/release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.
Battery fault 	- If the battery warning lamp comes on you must stop immediately as soon as the traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle (if necessary, place the two chocks under the wheels). - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY

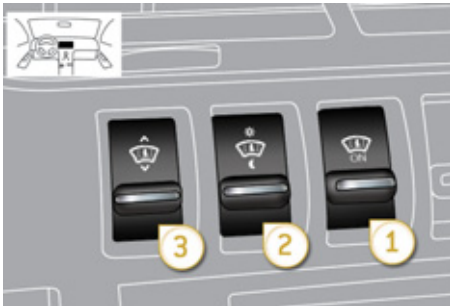


System which projects various information onto a transparent strip in the field of vision of the driver so that they do not have to take their eyes off the road.

This system operates when the engine is running and the settings are stored when the ignition is switched off.



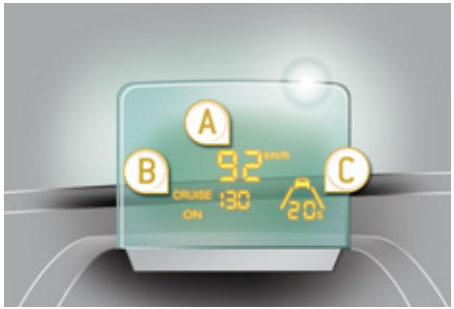
Buttons



1. Head-up display on / off.
2. Brightness adjustment.
3. Display height adjustment.

The strip is activated by pressing one of the buttons.

Displays during operation



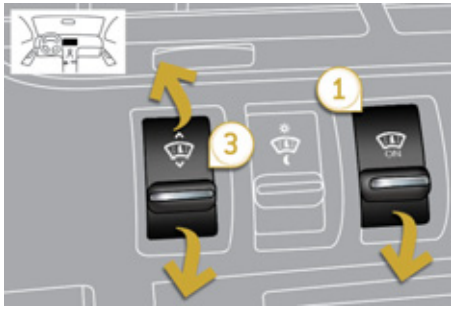
Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

A. The speed of your vehicle.

B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.

C. "Distance alert" information (depending on version).

Activation / Deactivation



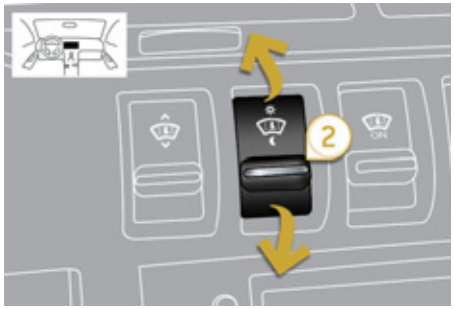
☞ With the engine running, press button **1**. The activated/deactivated status when the engine was switched off is retained when the engine is switched on again.

Height adjustment

☞ With the engine running, adjust the display to the required height using button **3**:

- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment



☞ With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information using button **2**:

- up to increase the brightness,
- down to decrease the brightness.

We recommend that adjustments are only made using these buttons when the vehicle is stationary.

When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the transparent strip (or on its cover) to avoid blocking the strip output and preventing its correct operation.

In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, ...) the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.

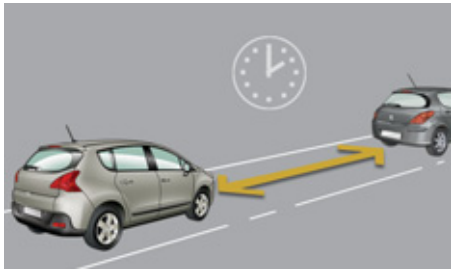
Certain glasses (sunglasses, spectacles or polarised lenses) may hamper reading of the information.

To clean the transparent strip, which is made of organic glass, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth or detergent or solvent products as these could scratch the strip or damage the anti-reflection coating.

DISTANCE ALERT*

Driving aid which informs the driver of the time interval (in seconds) separating them from the vehicle in front when the driving conditions are stable.

It does not detect stationary vehicles and does not itself take **any action** on your vehicle's controls.



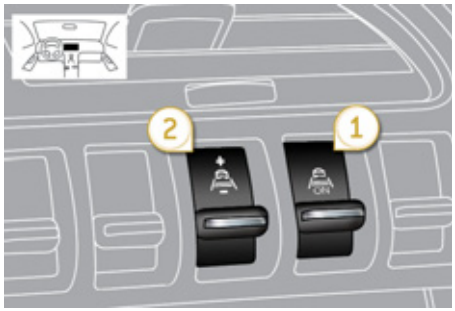
For the safety time to be observed, refer to the current legislation or highway code recommendations in your country.

The system operates when the speed of your vehicle is higher than 45 mph (70 km/h) and below 90 mph (150 km/h).

It has a programmable visual alert which remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

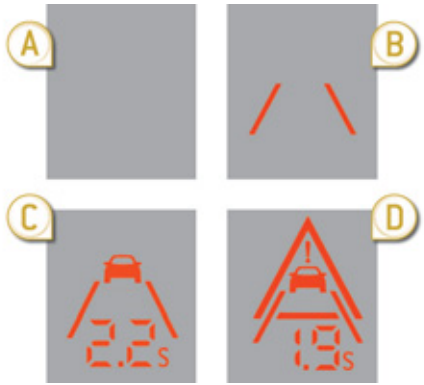
This system is a driving aid and cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

Buttons



1. On / off.
2. Alert value increase (+) / decrease (-).

Displays during operation



The information is grouped together in the head-up display.

Once the system has been activated:

A. The speed of your vehicle is outside the operating range.

B. Your vehicle is within the operating range but no vehicle has been detected.

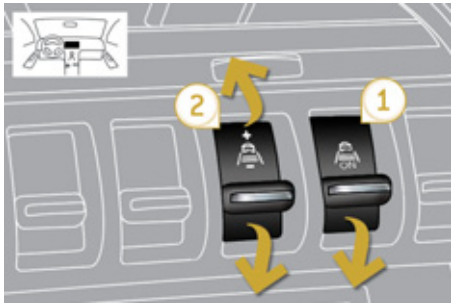
C. The vehicle in front of you has been detected.

The current time separating you from this vehicle is displayed permanently.

D. The time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front is less than the programmed alert value (it flashes).

* Depending on version

Activation



☞ Press button **1**, the indicator lamp comes on.

The system is activated but will only operate from 45 mph (70 km/h).

Programming the alert value

☞ Select the alert value required using button **2**, in steps of 0.1 second:
- up to increase: "+",
- down to decrease: "-".

Example with a value of 2 seconds:



The alert value can be programmed to between 0.9 second and 2.5 seconds.

The visual alert can be deactivated by programming a value of 0 second.

Alert



When the time (in seconds) between your vehicle and the vehicle in front is less than the programmed time (alert value), a visual alert flashes.

A safety time of 2 seconds is recommended in normal driving conditions (correct traction and speed) to avoid a collision in the event of emergency braking.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **1** to deactivate the system, the indicator lamp goes off.

Reactivation

☞ Press button **1** again to reactivate the system.

The last value programmed is retained and the indicator lamp comes on.

Operating limits

The system switches to standby automatically if the sensor does not detect the vehicle in front correctly (very difficult weather conditions, sensor out of adjustment, ...). A message is displayed in the multifunction screen.

The vehicle being followed may not be detected in certain conditions such as, for example:
- when turning,
- when changing lane,
- when the vehicle in front is either too far ahead (maximum range of the sensor: 100 m) or stationary (in a traffic jam, ...),

When the vehicle being followed is much too near (time between the two vehicles less than 0.5 seconds), the display remains fixed at 0.5 seconds.

If the indicator lamp in button **1** flashes, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

This system is not an anti-collision radar and it does not act of the movement of your vehicle. It provides information but cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect unless it is pressed firmly, which permits temporary exceeding of the programmed speed.

To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed by releasing the accelerator.

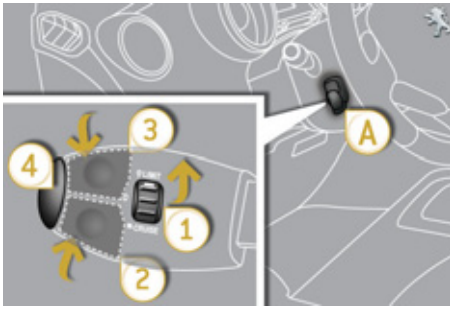
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

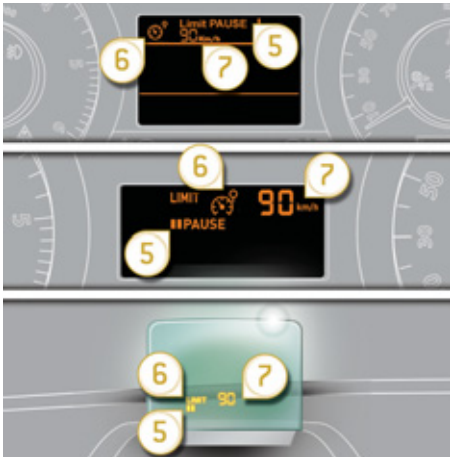
Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Speed limiter mode selection dial
2. Programmed value decrease button
3. Programmed value increase button
4. Speed limiter on / off button

Displays in the instrument panel



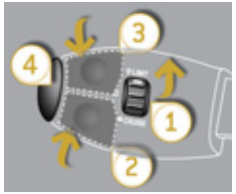
The programmed information is grouped together on the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on / off indication
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value

This information also appears in the head-up display.

For more information, refer to the "Head-up display" section.

Programming



☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF/Pause).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.



☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).



You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.

☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF/Pause).



☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.



Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.



Return to normal driving

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault

In the event of a speed limiter malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and the engagement of:

- fourth gear on the manual gearbox,
- second gear in sequential mode on the electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox,
- position **A** on the electronic gear control gearbox or **D** on the automatic gearbox.

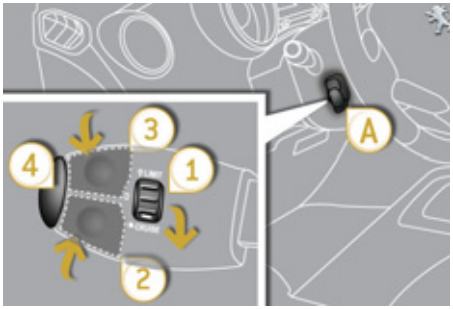
The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the ESP system for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls

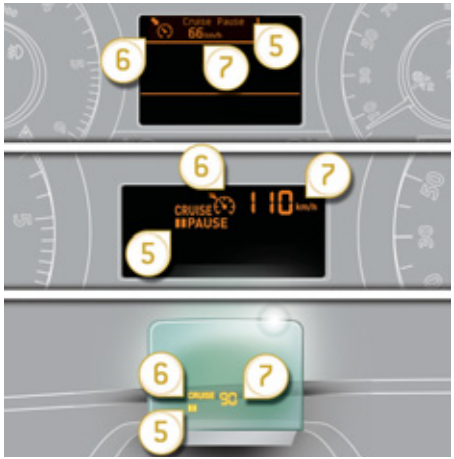


The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Cruise control mode selection dial
2. Speed programming / programmed value decrease button
3. Speed programming / programmed value increase button
4. Cruise control off / resume button

The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Displays in the instrument panel



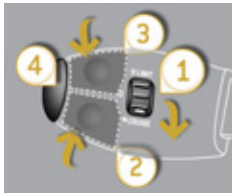
The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Cruise control off / resume indication
6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value

This information also appears in the head-up display.

For more information, refer to the "Head-up display" section.

Programming



☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF/Pause).

☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)).





You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF/Pause).



☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.



Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the screen.

Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.



Return to normal driving

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

Engaging reverse gear

☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.



Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up.

Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear recommended should not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

Example:

- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal moderately.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear, if appropriate.



The information appears in the form of an arrow in the instrument panel screen.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, this arrow may be accompanied by the recommended gear.

* According to engine.

6-SPEED ELECTRONIC GEAR CONTROL GEARBOX

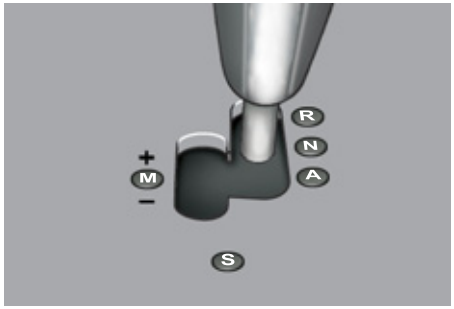
Six-speed electronic gear control gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

Three driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sequential** mode for manual changing of the gears by the driver,
- **auto sequential** mode to overtake, for example, remaining in automatic mode while using the functions of the sequential mode.

A **Sport** function is available in automatic or sequential mode for a more dynamic style of driving.

Gear lever



R. Reverse

☞ With your foot on the brake, move the lever upwards to select this position.

N. Neutral.

☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start.

A. Automatic mode.

☞ Move the lever downwards to select this mode.

M. + / - Sequential mode with manual changing of the gears.

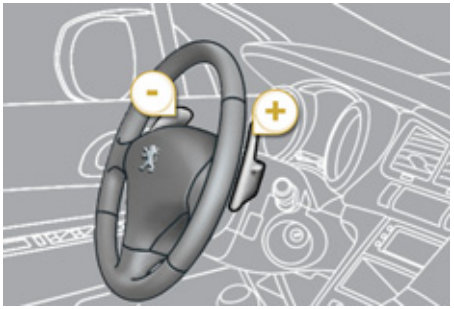
☞ Move the lever downwards then to the left to select this mode, then:

- push the lever forwards to change up a gear,
- or pull the lever rearwards to change down a gear.

S. Sport setting.

☞ Press this button to activate or deactivate this function.

Steering mounted controls



+. Change up paddle to the right of the steering wheel.

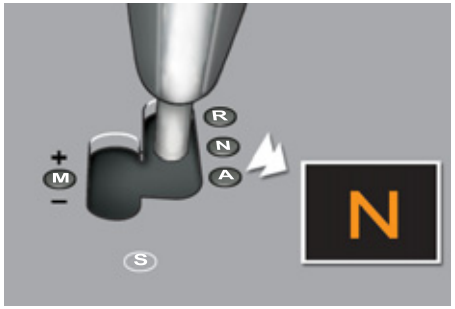
☞ Press the back of the **"+"** steering mounted paddle to change up a gear.

-. Change down paddle to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"-"** steering mounted paddle to change down a gear.

The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral or engage or disengage reverse gear.

Displays in the instrument panel



Gear lever positions

N. Neutral

R. Reverse

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. Gears in sequential mode

AUTO. This comes on when the automatic mode is selected. It goes off on changing to sequential mode.

S. Sport (Sport setting)

☞ Place your **foot on the brake** when this warning lamp flashes (e.g.: when starting the engine).

There is an audible signal when reverse gear is engaged.

Moving off

☞ Select position **N**.

☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.

☞ Start the engine.



N appears in the instrument panel screen.

N flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, if the gear lever is not in position **N** on starting.

Foot on brake flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, if the brake pedal is not pressed on starting.

☞ Keep your foot on the brake pedal, move the gear lever to position **A** or **M** to go forwards, or **R** to go backwards.

☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal, you can then move off.

☞ The parking brake is released automatically, otherwise release it manually.



AUTO and **1** or **R** appear in the instrument panel screen.

If position **R**, **A** or **M** is selected, even with the engine at idle, if the brakes are released the vehicle moves without any action on the accelerator. Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance on the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **N**.

Sequential mode

☞ When the vehicle has moved off, select position **M** to change to sequential mode.



AUTO disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel screen.

The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow vehicle to pull away in the correct gear.

At very low speed, if reverse gear is requested, this will only be taken into account when the vehicle is immobilised. The **Foot on brake** warning lamp may flash in the instrument panel to prompt you to brake.

At high speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** indicator lamp will flash and the gearbox will change to neutral automatically. To engage a gear again, return the lever to position **A** or **M**.

On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted paddles.

Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal pressed.

Automatic mode

☞ Following use of the sequential mode, select position **A** to return to the automatic mode.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox is then operating in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear in relation to the following parameters:

- style of driving,
- profile of the road.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

"Auto sequential mode"

This mode enables you to overtake, for example, remaining in automatic mode while using the functions of the sequential mode.

☞ Operate the **+** or **-** steering mounted paddle.

The gearbox engages the gear requested if the engine speed permits. **AUTO** is still displayed in the instrument panel.

After a few moments without any action on the controls, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Sport setting

☞ Following selection of the sequential mode or automatic mode, press button **S** to activate the Sport setting which offers you a more dynamic style of driving.



S appears next to the gear engaged in the instrument panel screen.

☞ Press button **S** again to return to normal settings.

S is then cleared from the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox returns to normal mode automatically each time the ignition is switched off.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can choose to:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral,
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, it is essential that you apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, it is essential to place the gear lever in neutral **N**.

Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, check that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Operating fault

With the ignition on, if this warning lamp comes on and **AUTO** flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates a fault with the gearbox.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

It is essential to press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

When parking, is it essential to apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, whatever the circumstances.

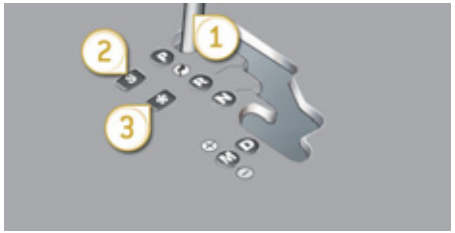
"PORSCHE TIPTRONIC SYSTEM" AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Four driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving,
- **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear lever.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.
3. Button **"❄" (snow)**.

Gear lever



P. Park.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.

- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M + / -. Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

☞ Press forwards to change up through the gears.

or

☞ Press rearwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

P. Park

R. Reverse

N. Neutral

D. Drive (Automatic driving)

S. Sport programme

❄. **Snow** programme

1 to 6. Gear engaged during manual operation

-. Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

- With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.
- Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

- With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
- Select position **R**, **D** or **M**,
- Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

- Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

- Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

- Press button "❄", after starting the engine.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

- At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Push the lever towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the lever towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, there is an audible signal and a message appears.

- ☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox malfunction.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.

You risk damaging the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), position the gear lever at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

STOP & START

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

For your comfort, during parking maoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- **with the electronic gearbox system**, at speeds below 4 mph (6 km/h), press the brake pedal or put the gear lever in position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

ECO In this case, the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts with the **electronic gearbox system**:

- gear lever in position **A** or **M**, release the brake pedal,
- or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, move the gear lever to position **A** or **M**,
- or engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

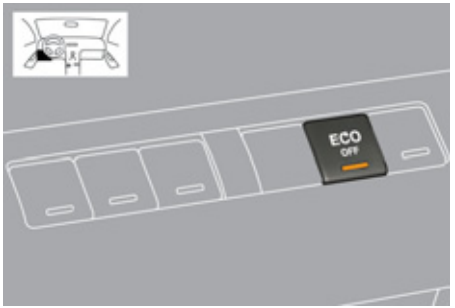
START mode is invoked automatically when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 7 mph (11 km/h) with the electronic gearbox system,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

ECO In this case the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

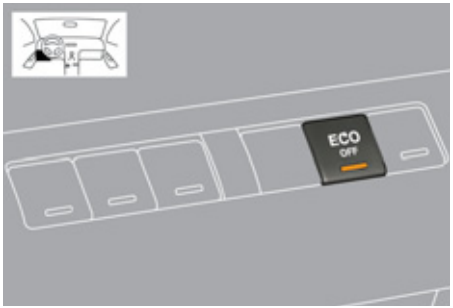
Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.

The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and a message in the screen.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes then comes on continuously.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall: all the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

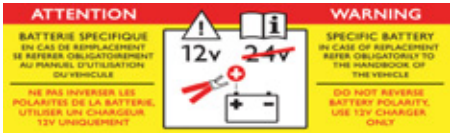
Maintenance

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a 12 V battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from PEUGEOT dealers).

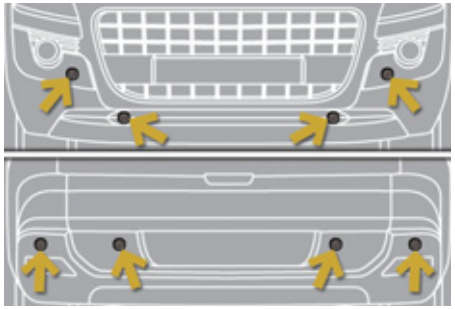
Fitting a battery not listed by PEUGEOT introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.

To charge the battery, use a 12 V charger and observe the polarity.



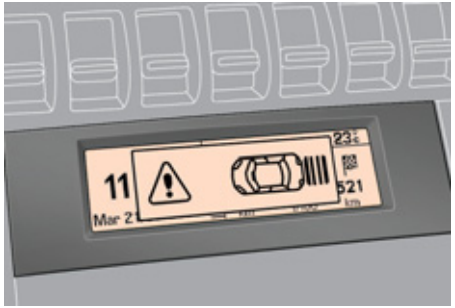
The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. For any work on the system go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment required, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

VISUAL AND AUDIBLE FRONT AND/OR REAR PARKING SENSORS



System consisting of four proximity sensors, installed in the front and/or rear bumper.

It detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, barrier...) located behind the vehicle, however, it will not be able to detect obstacles located immediately below the bumper.



The parking sensors are **switched on**:

- by engaging reverse gear,
- at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.

This is accompanied by an audible signal and display of the vehicle in the multifunction screen.



The proximity information is indicated by:

- an audible signal which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- a graphic in the multifunction screen, with blocks which move closer to the vehicle.

The obstacle is located in relation to the emission of the audible signal by the speakers; front or rear and right or left.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and/or the "Danger" symbol appears, depending on the multifunction screen version.

An object, such as a stake, a roadworks cone or any other similar object may be detected at the start of the manoeuvre but may no longer be detected when the vehicle moves nearer to it.

The parking sensors are **switched off**:

- when you exit reverse gear,
- when the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear,
- when the vehicle has been stationary for more than three seconds in forward gear.

The parking sensor system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Deactivation



☞ Press button **A**, the warning lamp comes on, the system is fully deactivated.

The system will be deactivated automatically when a trailer is being towed or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

Reactivation

☞ Press button **A** again, the warning lamp switches off, the system is reactivated.

Operating fault

If an operating fault occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep), when reverse gear is engaged.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

When the vehicle is being driven at a speed below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sources of noise (motorcycles, lorries, pneumatic drills, ...) may trigger the parking sensor audible signals.

PEUGEOT & TOTAL

PARTNERS IN PERFORMANCE AND PROTECTION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

Innovation at the service of performance

The TOTAL Research and Development teams develop lubricants for PEUGEOT which satisfy the requirements of the latest technical innovations incorporated in PEUGEOT vehicles.

This ensures that you obtain the best performance and the maximum engine life.

Reduced exhaust emissions

TOTAL lubricants are formulated to optimise the efficiency of engines and the protection of the emissions post-treatment systems. It is crucial to observe the servicing recommendations made by PEUGEOT to ensure correct operation.



PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

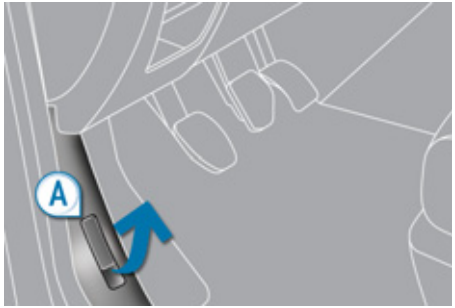
PEUGEOT TOTAL

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

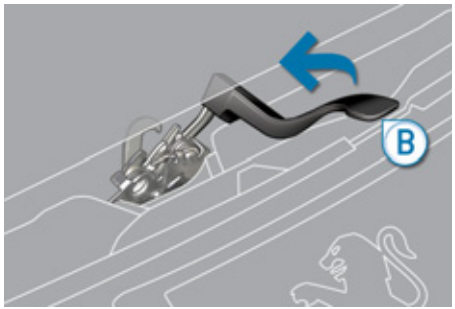
BONNET

Opening

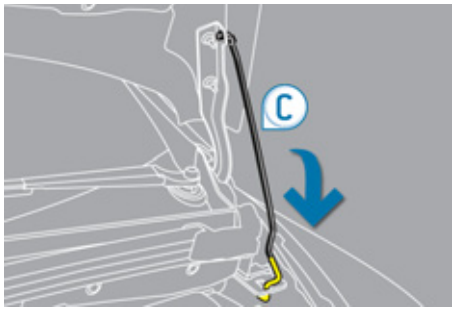
- Open the front left door.
- Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.



- Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the stay **C** from its housing.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.



The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.

Do not open the bonnet in high winds.

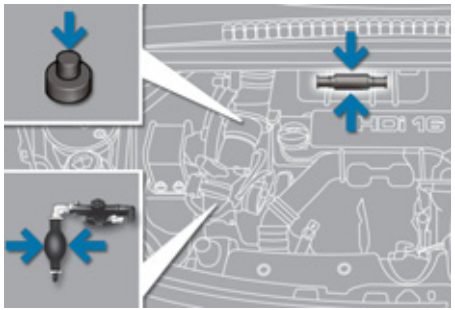
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)



On vehicle fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with a misfuel prevention device, refer to the "Misfuel prevention (Diesel)" section.

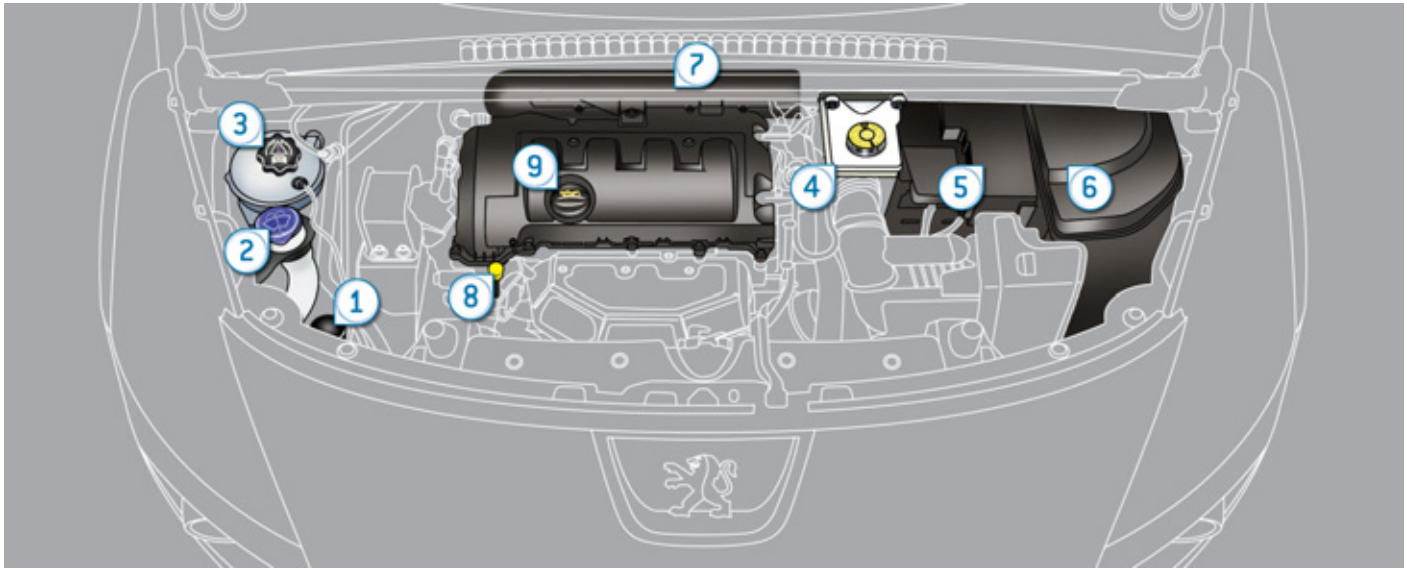
If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

1.6 litre HDi engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Clip the styling cover back in place.
- Close the bonnet.

2 litre HDi engine

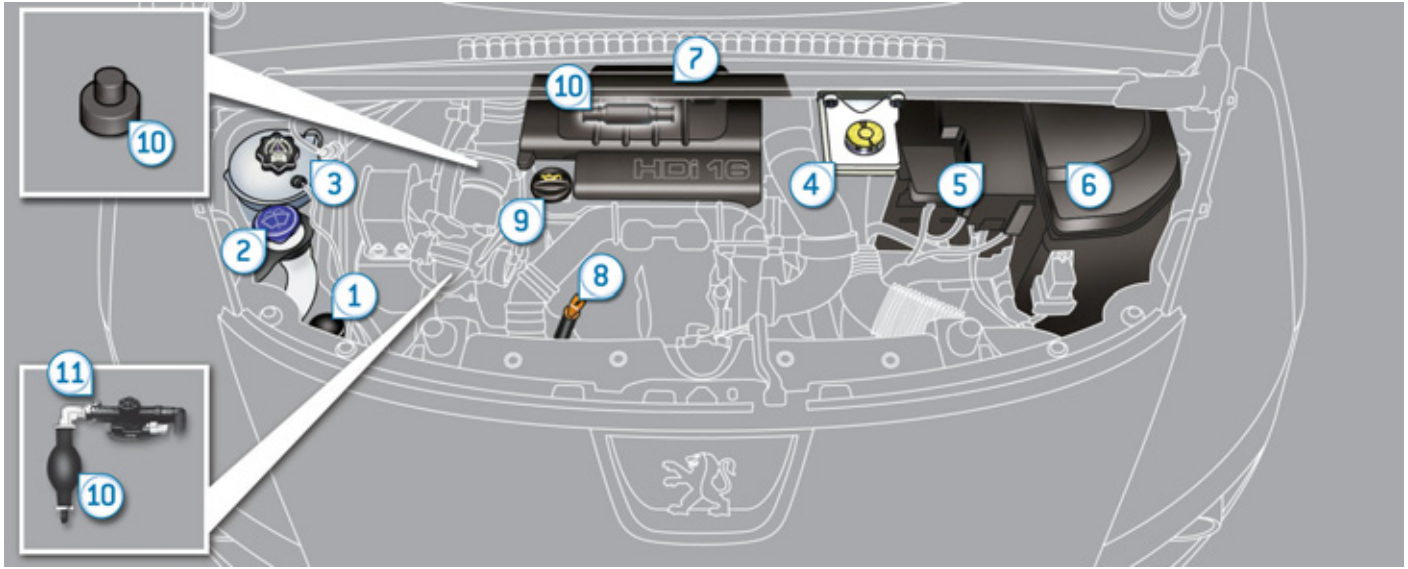
- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the style cover for access to the priming pump.
- Slacken the bleed screw.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe.
- Tighten the bleed screw.
- Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter.
- Put the style cover back in position and clip it in place, ensuring that it has clipped correctly.
- Close the bonnet.



PETROL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.



DIESEL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.
11. Bleed screw*.

* According to engine.

CHECKING LEVELS

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the servicing booklet and the requirements of the warranty. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator on the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

It will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

Oil specification

The oil must be the correct grade for your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and meet the DOT3 or DOT4 standard.

Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might become caught by the fan blades.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be changed.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)



A low additive level is indicated by illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the servicing booklet and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

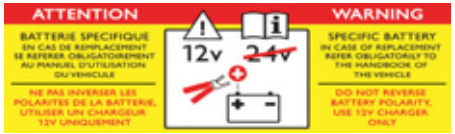
12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "12 V battery" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle emission filter (Diesel)

The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message in the multi-function screen.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for the details of the level checking interval for this component.

6-speed electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.

To avoid damaging the electrical units, the use of a high pressure washer in the engine compartment is strictly **prohibited**.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

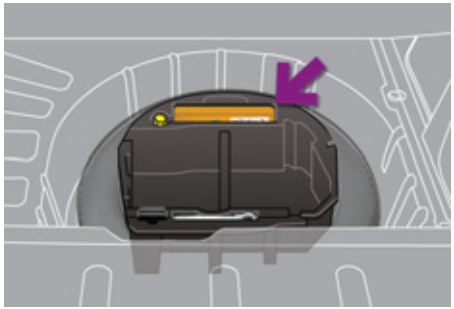
For more information, refer to the "Electric parking brake - Operating faults" section.

TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Access to the kit



The kit is stowed in the boot under the floor. It is installed in the tool box, located under the storage box.

List of tools



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. 12 V compressor.
   Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can be used to adjust the tyre pressures.
2. Two chocks to chock the vehicle.
3. Socket for security bolts (located in the glove box)*.
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special security bolts.

Other accessories



4. Removable towing eye.

Refer to the paragraph "Towing the vehicle".

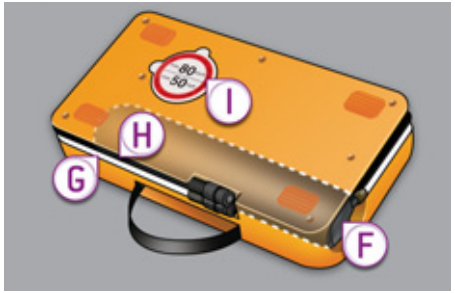
5. Electric parking brake emergency release control.

Refer to "Electric parking brake" in the "Driving" section.

* Depending on destination country.

Description of the kit





A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bar or p.s.i.).
E. Compartment housing:
- a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
- various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...

F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair.
H. Black pipe for inflation.
I. Speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

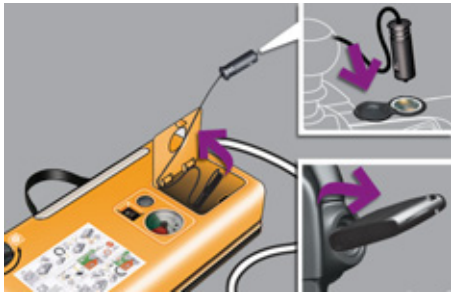
1. Sealing



- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

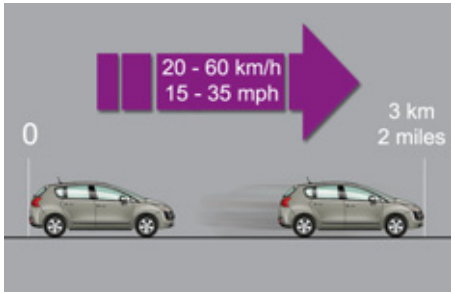
Keep this product out of the reach of children.

Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.

The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).



☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.

Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

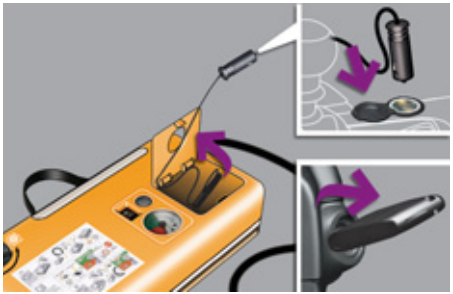
Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

2. Inflation



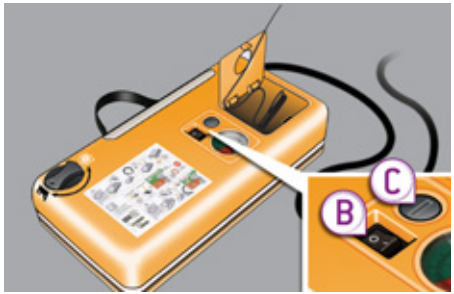
- Turn the selector **A** to the "air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.

As soon as possible, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

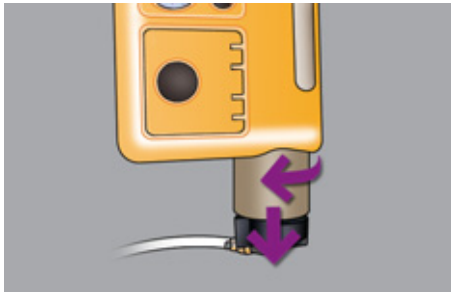
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.



- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).

  A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Remove and stow the kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

Removing the cartridge



- ☞ Stow the black pipe.
- ☞ Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- ☞ Support the compressor vertically.
- ☞ Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

Beware of discharges of fluid.

The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.

The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.

Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories

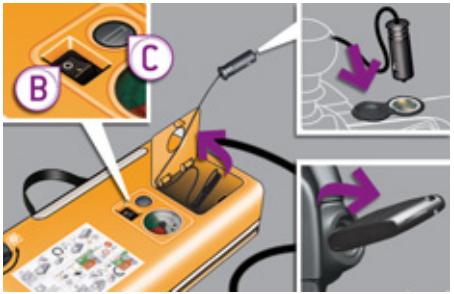
You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:

- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).



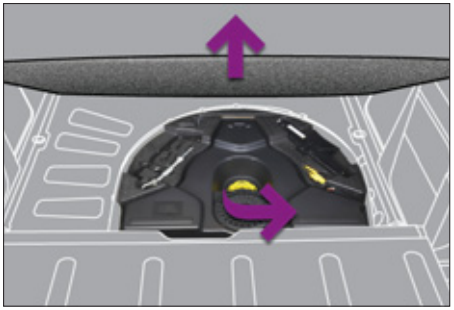
- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- ☞ Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.

  If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.

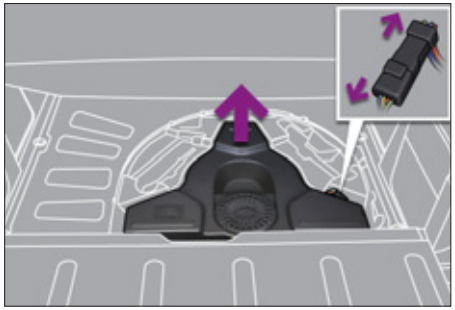


- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

With the JBL bass unit



- To make the operation easier, remove the adjustable boot floor,
- unscrew the yellow central bolt,

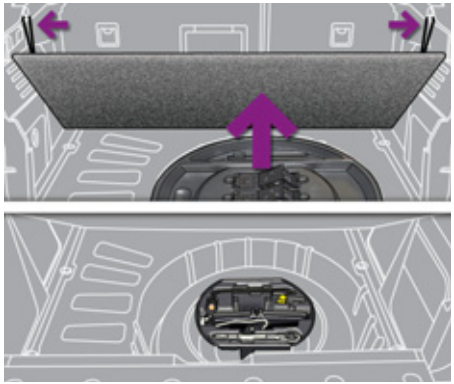


- remove the bass unit disconnecting the electrical harness,
- remove the polystyrene storage box.

CHANGING A WHEEL*

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- open the boot,
- place the adjustable boot floor at an angle (refer to the "Fittings" section),
- raise the floor,
- secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
- remove the polystyrene storage box,
- unclip by pulling upwards then remove the box containing the tools.

* Depending on destination country.

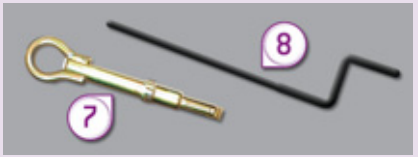
List of tools*



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. "Bolt cover" tool (according to equipment).
   For removing the bolt protectors (covers) on alloy wheels.
4. Centring guide.
   For refitting an alloy wheel to the hub.
5. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
6. Two chocks to immobilise the vehicle.

Other accessories



7. Removable towing eye.

Refer to the paragraph "Towing the vehicle".

8. Electric brake emergency release control.

Refer to "Electric parking brake" in the "Driving" section.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

* Depending on destination country.

Access to the spare wheel*



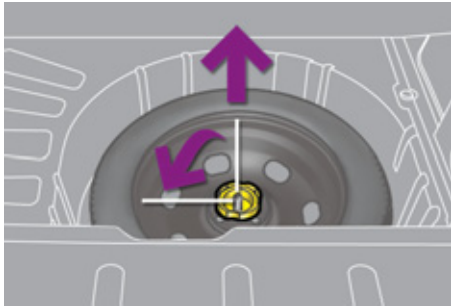
The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

Depending on country, the spare wheel may be steel, alloy or of the "space-saver" type.

To gain access to it, refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools" on the previous page.

Taking out the wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt.
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

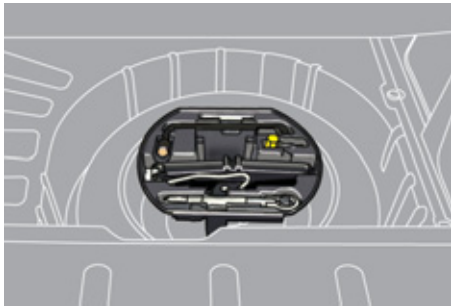


Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.
- ☞ Put the polystyrene storage box back in place.

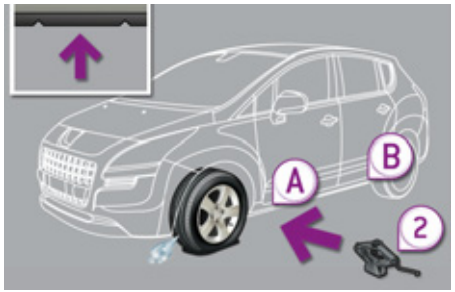


Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on destination country.

Removing a wheel



Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.

Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to lock the wheels.

Check that the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp on the parking brake control come on.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

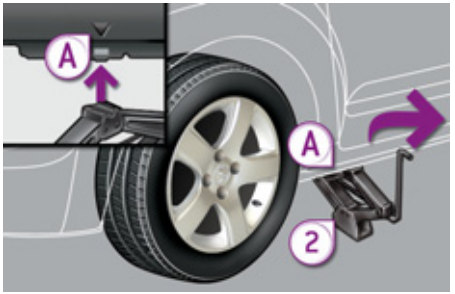
* position **R** for the electronic gear control gearbox; **P** for the automatic gearbox.

List of operations

- Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (according to equipment).
- Fit the security socket **5** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



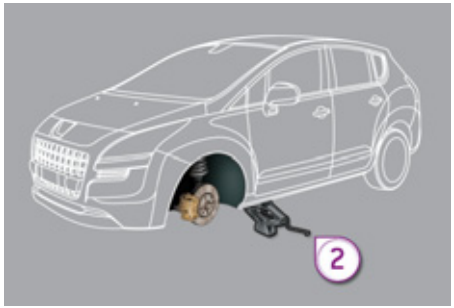
- Place the jack **2** in contact with one of the two front **A** or rear **B** locations provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- Extend the jack **2** until its base plate is in contact with the ground. Ensure that the centreline of the jack base plate is directly below the location **A** or **B** used.



- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.
- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.



Fitting a wheel



Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

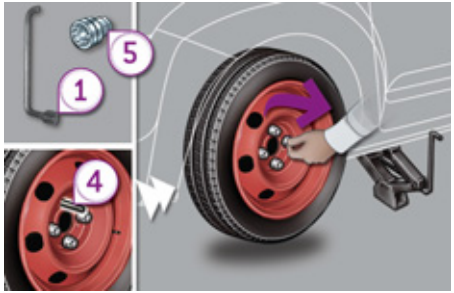
When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

List of operations

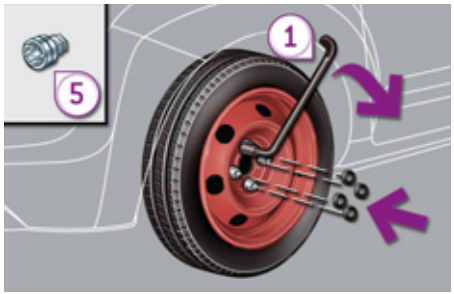
- Put the wheel in place on the hub using the centring guide **4**.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **5**, pre-tighten the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



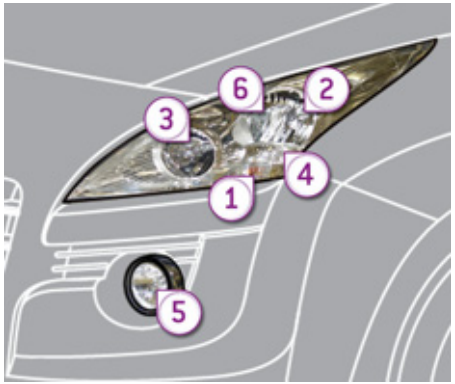
- Using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **5**, tighten the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (according to equipment).
- Store the tools in the box.



CHANGING A BULB

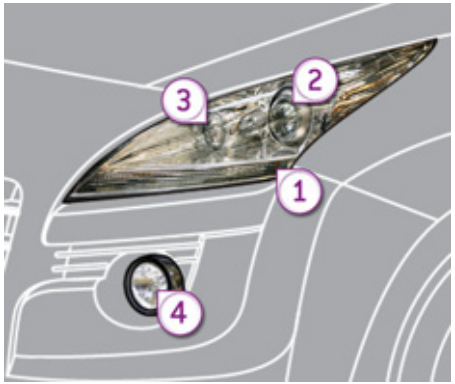
Front lamps

Model with halogen headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (HP24 amber-24W).**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
3. **Main beam headlamps (H7-55W).**
4. **Daytime running lamps (HP24-24W).**
5. **Foglamps (PS24-24W).**
6. **Sidelamps (W5-5W).**

Model with xenon and directional headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (HP24 amber-24W).**
2. **Dipped / main beam directional headlamps (D1S-35W).**
3. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W).**
4. **Foglamps (PS24-24W).**

Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S-35W) must be replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

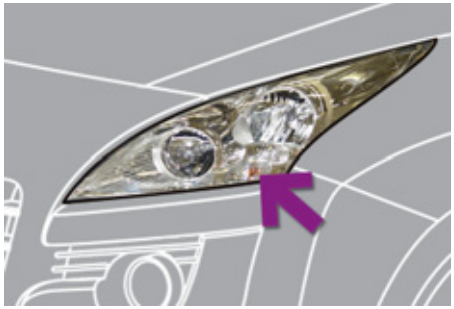
- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals,
- do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use lint-free cloths.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

It is imperative to use only anti-ultra-violet (UV) type bulbs in order not to damage the headlamp.

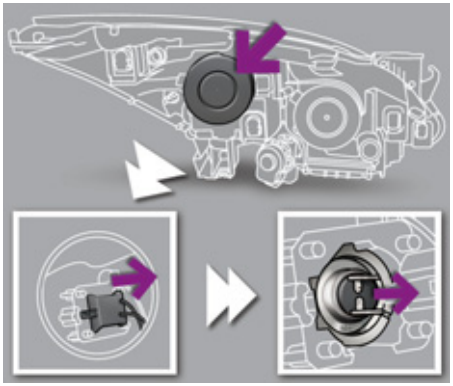
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Changing direction indicator and daytime running lamp bulbs (models with halogen headlamps)



Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

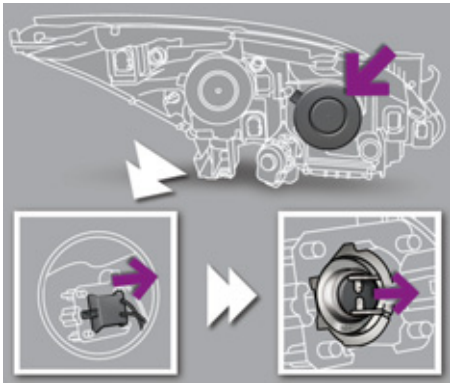
Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs (models with halogen headlamps)



- Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Extract the bulb by pulling and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing main beam headlamp and sidelamp bulbs



- Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Remove the bulb by pulling and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing dipped beam and main beam headlamp bulbs (models with xenon headlamps)

D1S xenon bulbs must be changed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as there is a risk of electrocution.

It is recommended that the D1S bulbs are changed at the same time when one of them fails.

Changing sidelamp and daytime running lamp bulbs (models with xenon headlamps)

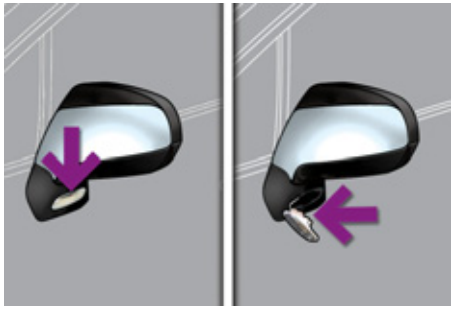
- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb by pulling and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing direction indicator bulbs

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters



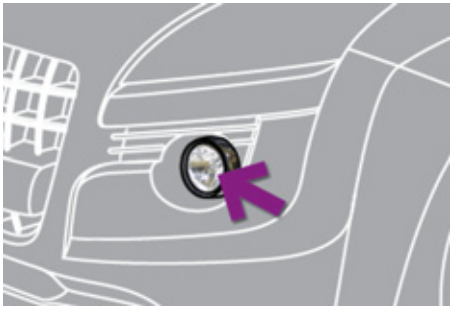
- ☞ Insert a screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- ☞ Tilt the screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- ☞ Disconnect the repeater connector.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain replacement repeaters.

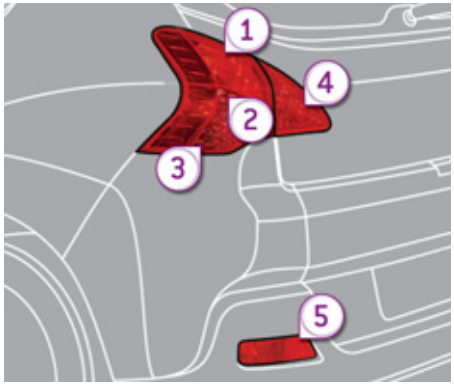
You can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have these bulbs changed.

Changing foglamp bulbs



Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

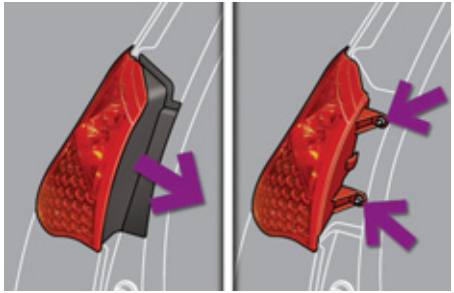
Rear lamps



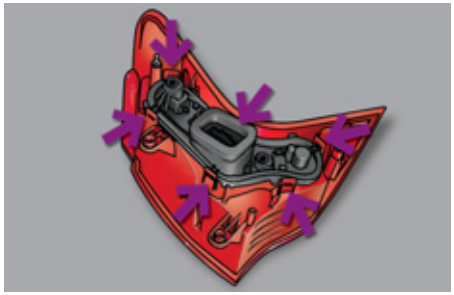
1. **Brake lamps / sidelamps (P21-5W).**
2. **Reversing lamps (P21W).**
3. **Direction indicators (PY21W-21W).**
4. **Sidelamps (P5-5W).**
5. **Foglamps (P21W).**

Changing brake lamp/sidelamp, reversing lamp and direction indicator bulbs

- ☞ Remove the plastic cover.
- ☞ Remove the two lamp unit fixing nuts.
- ☞ Extract the lamp unit carefully from the outside.
- ☞ Disconnect the electrical connector.

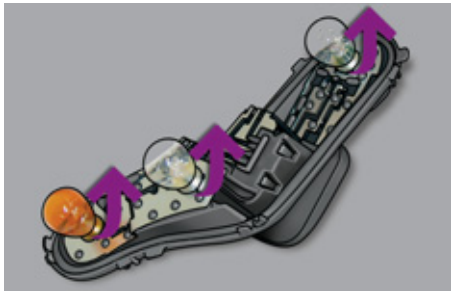


- ☞ Press the six tabs and remove the bulb holder.



- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



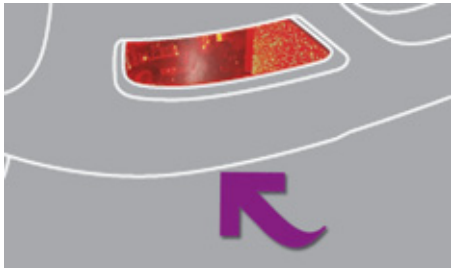
Changing sidelamp bulbs (boot)



- Open the boot.
- Remove the plastic flap using a screwdriver.
- Remove the lamp fixing nut.
- Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

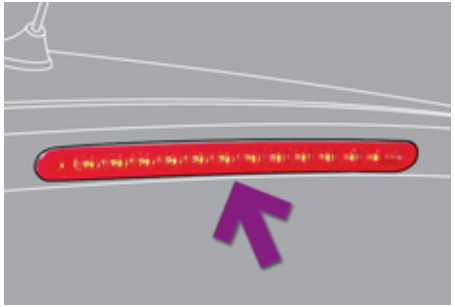
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing foglamp bulbs

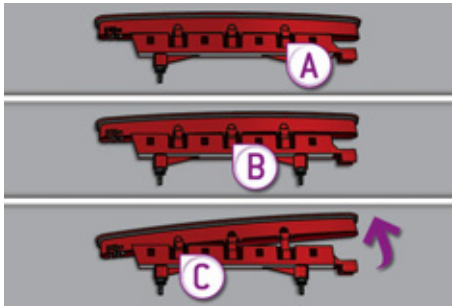


- Reach under the bumper.
- Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and pull it out.

Changing the third brake lamp bulb

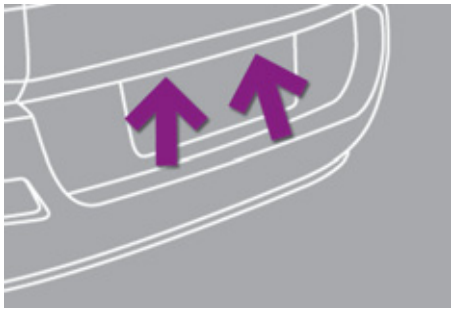


- Open the boot and remove the upper seal.
- Unscrow the two nuts.
- Press the threaded pins while supporting the lamp from the outside.
- Disconnect the connector and remove the screenwash pipe.



- Press the pairs of clips **A** then **B** then **C** to detach and gain access to the bulb holder.

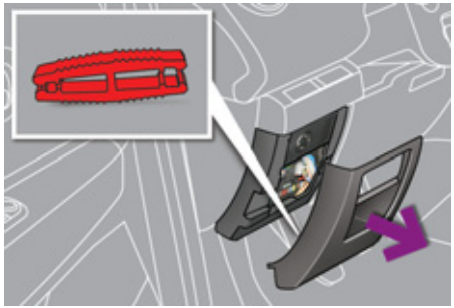
Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5-5W)



- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

CHANGING A FUSE

Procedure for replacing a faulty fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function.



Access to the tools

The extraction tweezer is fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ Remove the cover completely.
- ☞ Remove the tweezer.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse, the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified.

- ☞ Identify the failed fuse by checking the condition of its filament.



Good



Failed

- ☞ Use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing.
- ☞ Always replace the faulty fuse with a fuse of the same rating.
- ☞ Check that the number marked on the fusebox, the rating marked on the fuse and the following tables all agree.

Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

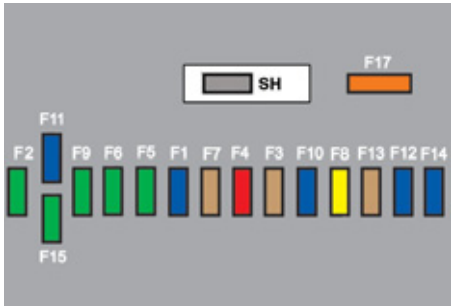
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard.



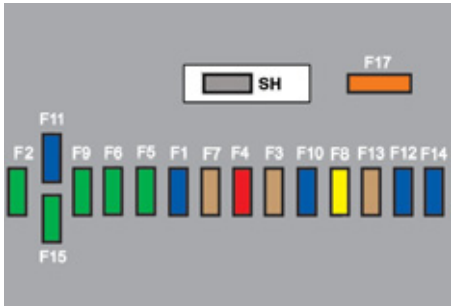


Fuse tables

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	15	Rear wiper.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	5	Airbag control unit.
F4	10	Electrochrome rear view mirror, air conditioning, switching and protection unit, rear multimedia.
F5	30	Front one-touch electric windows.
F6	30	Rear one-touch electric windows.
F7	5	Front and rear courtesy lamps, map reading lamps, rear reading lamps, sun visor lighting, glove box lighting, centre armrest lighting, boot 12 V relay control.

Access to the fuses

☞ Refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".

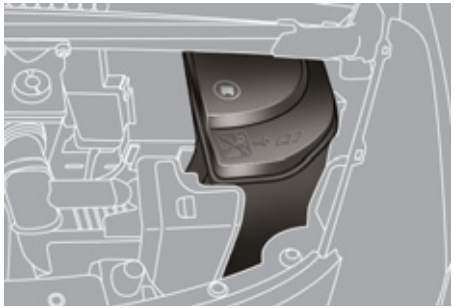


Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F8	20	Audio equipment, audio/telephone, CD changer, multifunction scren, tyre under-inflation detection, alarm siren, alarm control unit, telematic unit.
F9	30	Front 12 V socket, cigarette lighter, rear 12 V socket.
F10	15	Steering mounted controls.
F11	15	Low current ignition switch.
F12	15	Trailer presence, rain / sunshine sensor, supply for fuses F32, F34, F35.
F13	5	Engine fusebox, airbag control unit.
F14	15	Instrument panel, instrument panel screen, supply for fuse F33.
F15	30	Locking and deadlocking.
F17	40	Heated rear screen, supply for fuse F30.
SH	-	PARC shunt.

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F29	-	Nor used.
F30	5	Heated door mirrors.
F31	30	Boot 12 V socket.
F32	5	Electronic gear control gearbox gear lever.
F33	10	Head-up display, Bluetooth system, air conditioning.
F34	5	Seat belt warning lamp display.
F35	10	Parking sensors, Hi-Fi amplifier authorisation.
F36	10	Trailer fusebox control unit, driver's door control pad.
F37	20	Hi-Fi amplifier.
F38	30	Driver's electric seat.
F39	20	Panoramic sunroof blind.
F40	-	Not used.

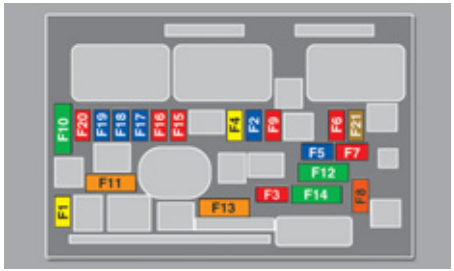
Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.



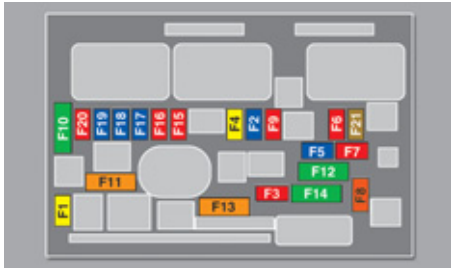
Access to the fuses

- Unclip the cover.
- Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	20	Engine control unit supply, injection pump and EGR electrovalves (2 litre HDI), injectors (2 litre HDI).
F2	15	Horn.
F3	10	Front / rear wash-wipe.
F4	10	Daytime running lamps.
F5	15	Purge canister, turbine discharge and Turbo pressure regulation electrovalves (1.6 litre THP), oil vapour heater (1.6 litre THP), diesel heater (1.6 litre HDI).
F6	10	Diagnostic socket, directional headlamps, particle emission filter pump (Diesel), Distance alert, engine coolant level detector, mirror adjustment control.
F7	10	Power steering control unit, automatic gearbox, directional headlamps height adjustment motor.
F8	20	Starter motor control.
F9	10	Clutch and brake pedal switches.
F10	30	Engine control unit actuators (petrol: ignition coils, electrovalves, oxygen sensors, injectors, heaters, fuel pump, electronic thermostat) (Diesel: electrovalves, heaters).
F11	40	Air conditioning fan.



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F12	30	Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed.
F13	40	Built-in systems interface supply (ignition positive).
F14	30	Air pump.
F15	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F16	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F17	15	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F18	15	Right-hand dipped headlamp.
F19	15	Oil vapour heater (1.6 litre VTi), Turbo pressure regulation electrovalve (Diesel), engine coolant level detector (Diesel).
F20	10	Electronic thermostat, variable timing electrovalves, Turbo pressure regulation electrovalve (Diesel), engine coolant level detector (Diesel).
F21	5	Fan assembly relay supply, Valvetronic relay control (1.6 l VTi 16V), Turbo cooling (1.6 litre THP), air flow sensor (1.6 litre HDI).

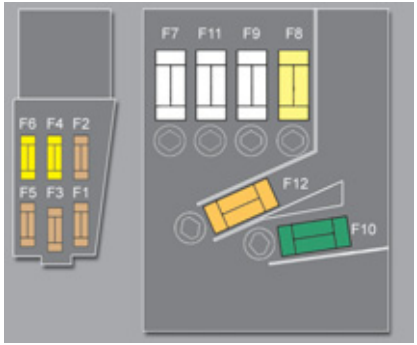


Table of mini and midi-fuses above the battery

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	-	Not used.
F2	5	Dual function brake switch.
F3	5	Battery charge unit.
F4	25	ABS/DSC electrovalves.
F5	5	ABS/DSC control unit.
F6	15	Automatic gearbox, electronic gear control gearbox.
F7*	80	Power steering electropump assembly.
F8*	60	Fan assembly.
F9*	80 / 30	Pre-heater unit (Diesel), Valvetronic electric motor (1.6 litre THP).
F10*	40	ABS/DSC electropump assembly.
F11*	100	Switching and protection unit.
F12*	30	Electronic gear control gearbox electropump assembly.

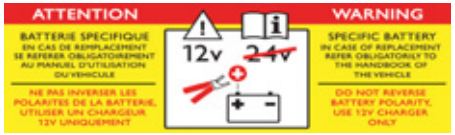
Table of maxi-fuses

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
MF1*	-	Not used.
MF2*	30	Trailer fusebox.
MF3*	50	Passenger compartment fusebox.
MF4*	80	Built-in systems interface.
MF5*	80	Built-in systems interface.
MF6*	30	Electric parking brake.
MF7*	30	Heated front seats.
MF8*	20	Headlamp wash.

* The maxi-fuses and certain other fuses provide additional protection for the electrical systems. All work on these fuses must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V BATTERY

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.



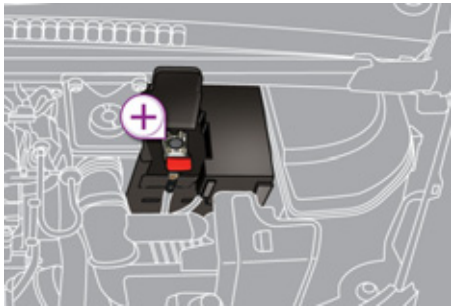
The presence of this label indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification, for which the involvement of a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop is required when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Failure to observe this recommendation may cause premature wear of the battery.

After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after several hours depending on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

The Stop & Start battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

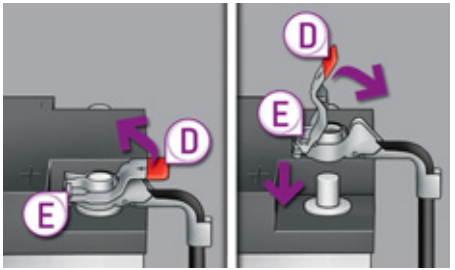
Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ secure the bonnet stay,
- ☞ remove the plastic cover on the (+) terminal,
- ☞ if necessary, unclip the fusebox to remove the battery.



Disconnecting the (+) cable

- ☞ Raise the locking tab **D** fully to release the cable terminal clamp **E**.

Reconnecting the (+) cable

- ☞ Position the open clamp **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- ☞ Press vertically on the clamp **E** to position it correctly on the battery.
- ☞ Lock the clamp by spreading the positioning lug and then lowering the tab **D**.

Do not apply excessive force on the tab as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables.

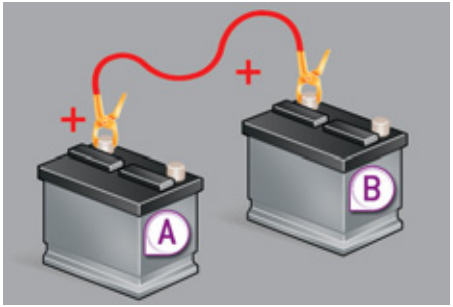
First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

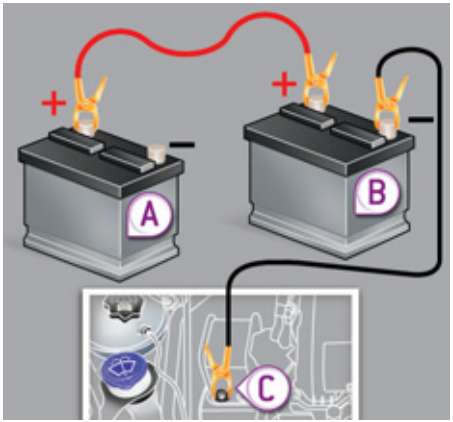
Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.

- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle (or on the engine mounting).
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run

  If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.





- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

- Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- Connect the battery starting with the negative terminal (-).
- Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.

All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.

Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid the risk of explosion. If the battery has been frozen, before charging have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.

Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.

Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

Wash your hands afterwards.

Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if you have an electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if problems remain following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise (depending on version):

- the remote control key,
- the electric blind(s),
- ...

LOAD REDUCTION MODE

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to economy mode

Once this time has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If the telephone is being used at this time:

- it will be maintained for 5 minutes with the hands-free kit of your Peugeot Connect Sound or Peugeot Connect Navigation,
- it will still be possible to finish the call with the Peugeot Connect Media.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

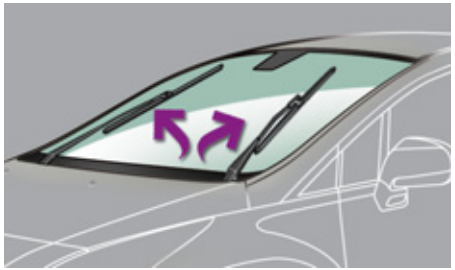
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for at least 5 minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the "Battery" paragraph).

CHANGING A WIPER BLADE



Before removing a front wiper blade

- Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

- Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

- Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

- Switch on the ignition.
- Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools

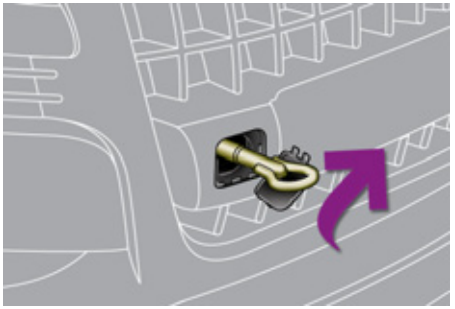


The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- open the boot,
- raise the floor,
- secure it by hooking the cords on the hooks on the rear parcel shelf support,
- remove the polystyrene box,
- remove the towing eye from the holder.

Towing from the front

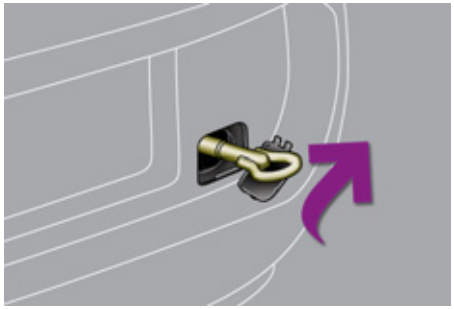


- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox).

Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

Towing from the rear



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The person at the wheel of the towed vehicle must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing bar; rope and straps are prohibited.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- 4 wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing bar available...

TOWING A TRAILER

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer or installation of a bicycle carrier, with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the towbar is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.

☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

FITTING ROOF BARS



When fitting transverse roof bars, use the four quick-fit fixings provided for this purpose:

- lift the concealing flaps,
- open the fixing covers on each bar using the key,
- put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one,
- ensure that roof bars are correctly fitted (by shaking them),
- close the fixing covers on each bar using the key.

Maximum authorised weight on the roof rack, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): **65** kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

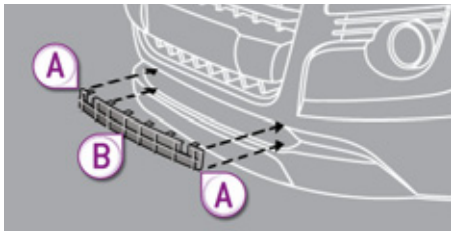
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

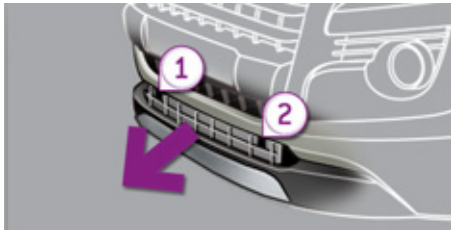
Before fitting or removing the screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped. It is recommended that the screen be fitted and removed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fitting



- Offer up the screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper (do not use the upper ventilation grille position).
- Press on the edges **A** to engage its fixing clips.
- Press on the middle at **B** to complete the engagement of the fixing clips.

Removal



- Pull on the very cold climate screen using the cut-outs **1** then **2** at the edges of the screen.

Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:

- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10° C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the PEUGEOT dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

"Transport solutions":

For leisure pursuits: roof bars, bicycle carrier on towbar, bicycle carrier on roof bars, ski carrier, roof box, booster seats and child seats, side blinds, under shelf storage.

Trailer towbar, which must be fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer.

"Style":

seat covers compatible with lateral airbags, leather gear lever knob, foglamps, door deflectors, spoiler, styling strips, alloy wheels, trims, chrome-plated door handle shells.

"Safety and security":

anti-theft alarm, window etching, wheel security bolts, first aid kit, breathalyzer, warning triangle, high visibility vest, stolen vehicle tracking system, dog guard, snow chains.

"Protection":

mats*, boot tray, luggage net, coat hanger fixed on head restraint, stainless steel or carbon fibre style door sills.

"Multimedia":

audio systems, amplifiers, satellite navigation systems, Bluetooth hands-free system, CD changer, speakers, DVD player, USB Box, front and rear parking sensors, additional Bluetooth wireless headphones, Bluetooth audio headphones mains charger.

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety vest, warning triangle and spare bulbs and fuses available in the vehicle.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.

Please note this precaution. You are advised to contact a PEUGEOT representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

You can also obtain cleaning and maintenance products (exterior and interior), products for topping up (screenwash fluid...) and refills (sealant cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...) from PEUGEOT dealers.

* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

PETROL ENGINES AND GEARBOXES

Engines	**1.6 litre VTi 120 hp**	**1.6 litre THP 156 hp**	
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 598	
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8	
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	88	115 / 110 - 120**	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	6 000	6 000	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	160	240	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 250	1 400	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	yes	yes	
Oil capacities (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.25	4.25	

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under the conditions defined in European legislation (directive 1999/99/CE).

** Overseas export

PETROL WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (IN KG)

Engines	1.6 litre VTi 120 hp	1.6 litre THP 156 hp	
Gearboxes	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
- Unladen weight	1 399	1 459	1 480
- Kerb weight*	1 474	1 534	1 555
- Payload	621	561	
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 020	2 020	2 030
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 220	3 426	3 530/ 2 830***
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 200	1 400 / 800***	
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 500	1 500	
- Unbraked trailer	735	750	
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.
*** Overseas export

DIESEL ENGINES AND GEARBOXES

Engines	**1.6 litre Turbo e-HDi 115 hp**		**2 litre Turbo HDi 150 hp**	**2 litre Turbo HDi 163 hp**
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic gear control (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		1 997	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3		85 x 88	
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	82		110/120	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000		3 750	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	270		320/340	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		2 000	
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	
Catalytic converter	yes		yes	
Particle emission filter	yes		yes	
Oil capacities (in litres)				
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.75		-	

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under the conditions defined in European legislation (directive 1999/99/CE).

DIESEL WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (IN KG)

Engines	1.6 litre Turbo e-HDi 115 hp			2 litre Turbo HDi 150 hp	2 litre Turbo HDi 163 hp
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic gear control (6-speed)	Electronic gear control (6-speed) Score	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
- Unladen weight	1 421			1 529	1 539
- Kerb weight*	1 497			1 604	1 614
- Payload	609			557	566
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 030			2 086	2 105
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 130		2 920	3 480	3 500
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 100		890	1 400	
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer with the GTW limit)	1 300		1 090	1 500	
- Unbraked trailer	745			750	
- Recommended nose weight	70			70	

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

DIESEL WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (IN KG) - COMMERCIAL VEHICLES

Engines	**1.6 litre Turbo e-HDi 115 hp**			**2 litre Turbo HDi 150 hp**
Gearboxes	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic gear control (6-speed) Score	Electronic gear control (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model codes	9HZ	9HR	9HZ	RHE
- Unladen weight	1 434		1 430	1 538
- Kerb weight*	1 509		1 505	1 613
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)**	2 150		2 135	2 239
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient***	3 120	2 920	3 130	3 480
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient****	970	770	995	1 241
- Braked trailer (with load transfer with the GTW limit)	X	X	X	X
- Unbraked trailer		750		750
- Recommended nose weight		70		70

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** Exceeding the maximum rear axle weight involves a speed restriction of 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined in point 2.7 of the Directive.

*** Exceeding the gross vehicle weight when the vehicle is towing involves a speed restriction of 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined in point 2.7 of the Directive.

**** Maximum braked trailer weight, within the GTW limit; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

DIMENSIONS (IN MM)



IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

Various visible markings for the identification and tracing of your vehicle.

A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper support.

B. Vehicle identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower crossmember.

This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

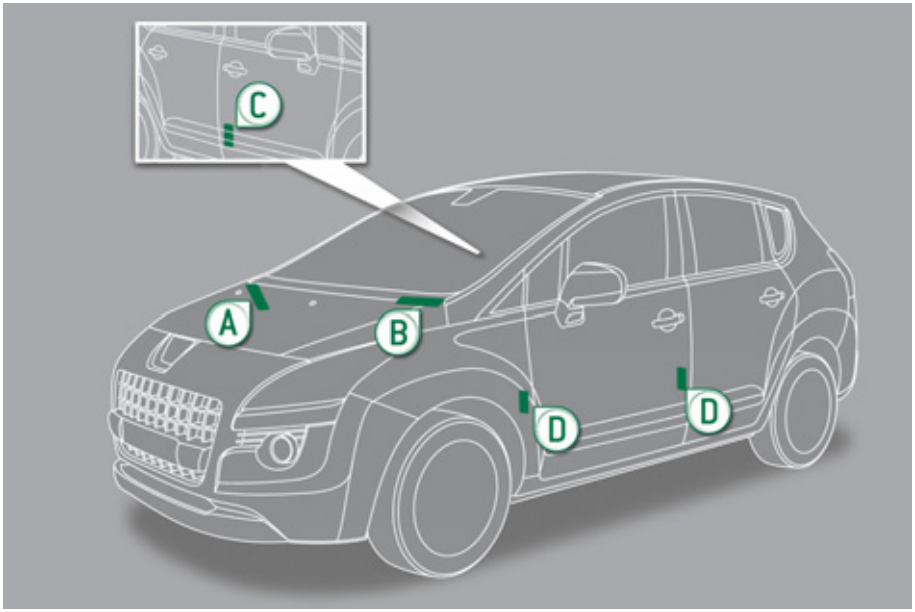
The VIN is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the door aperture, on the driver's side.

D. Tyre/paint label.

This label is fitted to the middle pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the brands of tyre recommended by the manufacturer,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.



The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.



EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS call centre*.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green LED goes off. Cancellation is confirmed by a voice message

To cancel a call, tell the PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS call centre that the call was a mistake.

PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS immediately locates you vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS, PEUGEOT CONNECT ASSISTANCE and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services are available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

PEUGEOT CONNECT ASSISTANCE



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

OPERATION OF THE SYSTEM



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.

If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.

In either case, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL USING Peugeot Connect Media

PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS

Warning - the emergency call and the services are only active if the internal telephone is used with a valid SIM card. With a Bluetooth telephone and without a SIM card, these services are not operational.



In an emergency, press the SOS button until an audible signal is heard and a "Confirmation / Cancellation" screen is displayed (if valid SIM card inserted).

A call is made to the PEUGEOT Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the relevant emergency services.

In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent to the emergency services (112).

If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

The message "Deteriorated emergency call" associated with flashing of the orange indicator lamp indicates a malfunction. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

PEUGEOT CONNECT ASSISTANCE

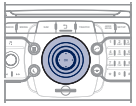


Press this button for access to PEUGEOT services.



Select "Customer call" to request any information about the PEUGEOT marque.

Customer call





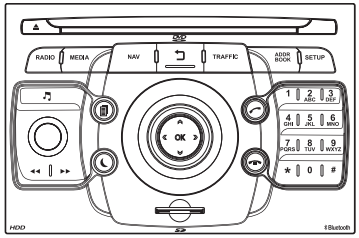
Select "PEUGEOT Assistance" to make a roadside assistance call.

PEUGEOT Assistance



This service is subject to conditions and availability. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer. If you have purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.

400
400
500
400
400
500



Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE GPS EUROPE

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, it is imperative that the driver carries out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01 First steps	p.	220
02 Voice commands and steering mounted controls	p.	222
03 General operation	p.	225
04 Navigation - Guidance	p.	230
05 Traffic information	p.	239
06 Radio	p.	241
07 Music media players	p.	242
08 Using the telephone	p.	247
09 Screen menu map	p.	252
Frequently asked questions	p.	257

01 FIRST STEPS

Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) CONTROL PANEL

Access to the Media Menu (audio CD, Jukebox, Auxiliary input).
Display the list of tracks.
Change the audio source.

Access to the Navigation Menu and display recent destinations.

Abandon the current operation.
Long press: return to main display.

Access to the Traffic Menu.

Access to the Address book Menu.

Access to the Radio Menu
Display the list of stations in alphabetical order (FM band) or frequency order (AM band).

Audio settings (Balance / Fader, Bass / Treble, Musical ambience...).

Adjust volume (each source is independent, including navigation messages and alerts).
Long press: reinitialise the system.
Short press: mute.



Access to the "SETUP" menu (configuration).
Long press: GPS coverage.

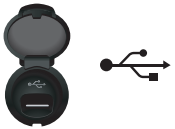
Enter the numbers or letters using the alpha-numeric keypad.
Presetting 10 radio frequencies.

Automatic search down/up for radio frequencies.
Select previous/next CD or MP3 track.

SD card reader.

Short press: clears the last character.





Press to left / right:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next frequency.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the previous / next track.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": horizontal movement on the map.

Press up / down:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next radio station in the list.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the MP3 folder.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": vertical movement on the map.

Go the the next or previous page in a menu.

Movement on the virtual keypad displayed.

OK: confirm the highlighted item.

Select successive display in the screen of "MAP" / "NAV" (if navigation in progress) / "TEL" (if a call is in progress) / "RADIO" or "MEDIA" being played.

CALL: access to the Phone menu.

Bluetooth connection, accept an incoming call.



Rotate the dial:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next radio station in the list.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the previous / next CD or MP3 track.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": zoom the map in/out.

Movement of the menu selection cursor.

Normal display or black screen.

END CALL: access to the Phone menu.

End a call in progress or reject an incoming call, Bluetooth connection.

VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION

1

Before using the system for the first time, you are advised to listen to, say and practice the tutorial.

2



Press the SETUP button and select the "Language & Speech" function.
Turn the ring and select "Voice control".
Activate voice recognition.
Select "Tutorial".



The phrases to be spoken according to the context are indicated in the tables below.
Speak and Peugeot Connect Media acts.



Pressing the end of the lighting control stalk activates voice recognition.



CONTEXT	SAY	ACTION
GENERAL	Help address book	Access to the address book help
	Help voice control	Access to the voice recognition help
	Help media	Access to the media management help
	Help navigation	Access to the guidance, navigation help
	Help telephone	Access to the telephone help
	Help radio	Access to the radio help
	Cancel	To cancel a voice command which is in progress
	Correction	Request to correct the last voice recognition carried out
		Clear
RADIO	Select station	Select a radio station
	Station <tts:stationName>	Select a radio station using its RDS description <tts:station Name> from the RADIO list
	Read out station list	Listen to the list of stations available
	Enter frequency	Listen to the frequency of the current radio station
	Select wave band	Choose the frequency waveband (AM or FM)
	AM	Change the frequency waveband to AM
	FM	Change the frequency waveband to FM
	TA on	Activate Traffic Info (TA)
	TA off	Deactivate Traffic Info
NAVIGATION	Destination input	Command to enter a new destination address
	Voice advice off	Deactivate the spoken guidance instructions
	Voice advice on	Activate the spoken guidance instructions
	Save address	Save an address in the address book
	Start guidance	Start guidance (once the address has been entered)
	Abort guidance	Stop the guidance
	Navigate entry	Start guidance to an entry in the address book
	POI Search	Start guidance to a point of interest

VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION



CONTEXT	SAY	ACTION
MEDIA	Media	Select the MEDIA source
	Select media	Choose a source
	Single slot	Select the CD player source
	Jukebox	Select the Jukebox source
	USB	Select the USB player source
	External device	Select the audio AUX input source
	SD-Card	Select the SD card source
	Track <1 - 1000>	Select a specific track (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM
	Folder <1 - 1000>	Select a Folder (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM
TELEPHONE	Phone menu	Open the Telephone Menu
	Enter number	Enter a telephone number to be called
	Phone book	Open the phone book
	Dial	Make a call
	Save number	Save a number in the phone book
	Accept	Accept an incoming call
	Reject	Reject an incoming call
ADDRESS BOOK	Address book menu	Open the address book
	Call <entry>	Call file using its <file> description as described in the address book
	Navigate <entry>	Start guidance to an address in the address book using its <file> description

02 VOICE COMMANDS AND STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

Wiper stalk: display "RADIO" and "MEDIA".

Lighting stalk: activate voice commands with a short press; indication of the current navigation instruction with a long press

Radio: select the previous/next pre-set station.

CD audio: select the previous/next track.

If "MEDIA" is displayed in the screen:

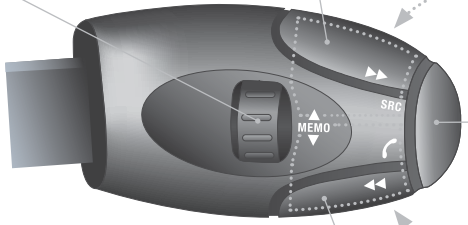
MP3 CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the previous/next folder.

Select the previous/next item in the contacts list.

Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the next track.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast forwards.



Volume increase.

Change audio source.

Start a call from the contacts list

Call/hang up the telephone.

Confirm a selection.

Press for more than 2 seconds: telephone menu.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the previous track.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast backwards.

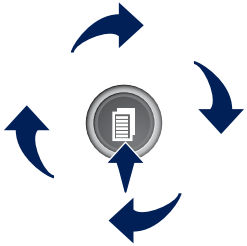
03 GENERAL OPERATION
DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

Press the MODE button several times in succession to gain access to the following displays:

RADIO / MUSIC MEDIA / VIDEO

TELEPHONE
(If a conversation is in progress)







FULL SCREEN MAP

NAVIGATION
(If guidance is in progress)



SETUP:
access to the "SETUP" Menu: system language* and voice functions*, voice initialisation (section 09), date and time*, display, unit and system parameters.

* Available according to model.



TRAFFIC:
access to the Traffic Menu: display of the current traffic alerts.



MEDIA:
"DVD-audio" menu
"DVD-Video" menu

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and to the demonstration mode.

For maintenance of the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, without any additional product.

For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this handbook.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

Pressing OK gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):



- 1 **Abort guidance**
- 1 **Repeat advice**
- 1 **Block road**
  - 2 Unblock
  - 2 More
  - 2 Less
  - 2 Calculate
  - 2 Zoom/Scroll
  - 2 Browse route
- 1 **Route info**
  - 2 Show destination
  - 2 Trip info
    - 3 Route type
    - 3 Avoid
    - 3 Satellites
    - 3 Stopovers
  - 2 Browse route
  - 2 Zoom/Scroll
- 1 **Voice advice**
- 1 **Route options**
  - 2 Route type
  - 2 Route dynamics
  - 2 Avoidance criteria
  - 2 Recalculate

TELEPHONE:

- 1 **End call**
- 1 **Hold call**
- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **DTMF-Tones**
- 1 **Private mode**
- 1 **Micro off**

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 **TA**
- 1 **Play options**
  - 2 Normal order
  - 2 Random track
  - 2 Scan
- 1 **Select media**

03 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

RADIO:

- 1 **In FM mode**
  - 2 TA
  - 2 RDS
  - 2 Radiotext
  - 2 Regional prog.
  - 2 AM
- 1 **In AM mode**
  - 2 TA
  - 2 Refresh AM list
  - 2 FM

FULL SCREEN MAP:

- 1 **Abort guidance / Resume guidance**
- 1 **Set destination / Add stopover**
- 1 **POIs nearby**
- 1 **Position info**



- 2 Guidance options
  - 3 Navigate to
  - 3 Dial
  - 3 Save position
  - 3 Zoom/Scroll
- 1 **Map Settings**
  - 2 2D Map
  - 2 2.5D Map
  - 2 3D Map
  - 2 North Up
  - 2 Heading Up
- 1 **Zoom/Scroll**

AUDIO DVD (LONG PRESS):

- 1 **Stop**
  - 2 Group
    - 3 Group 1 .2/n
  - 2 Play options
    - 3 Normal order / Random track / Scan
- 1 **TA**
  - 2 Select media

VIDEO DVD (LONG PRESS):

1 **Play**

2 Stop

2 DVD menus

3 DVD menu

3 DVD top menu

3 List of titles

3 List of chapters

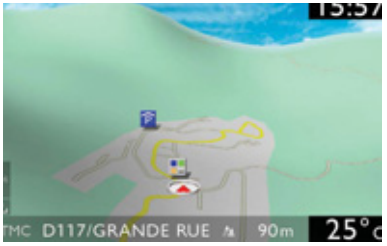
2 DVD Options

3 Audio

3 Subtitles

3 Angle

Examples:







- **the map setting which allows the map to be displayed flat, in perspective or in 3D.**

Flat map

Map in perspective

Map in 3D



- **configuration of the system by means of voice commands.**

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

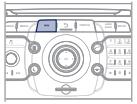
SELECTING A DESTINATION

The "NAVIGATION" voice commands are listed in section 02.
During guidance, a long press on the end of the lighting stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.

1



Press the NAV button.



The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the Navigation Menu function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu



3



Select the "Destination input" function and press OK to confirm.

Destination input



4



Select the "Address input" function and press OK to confirm.

Address input



5



Once the country has been selected, turn the ring and select the town function. Press OK to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing OK.



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

It is possible to scroll the map using the 4-direction navigator. It is possible to select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the "Full screen map". Press OK then select "Map Settings" and confirm.

7



Turn the ring and select OK.
Press OK to confirm.



To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street" and "House number" functions.



Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press OK to confirm the selection.
The Peugeot Connect Media allows more than 4 000 contact records to be saved.

To delete a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:

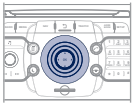
Delete entry **Delete list**

9



Then select "Start route guidance" and the press OK to confirm.

Start route guidance



10



Select the route type:
"Fast route", "Short route", or "Optimized route" and press OK to confirm.



11



Select the road with the colour corresponding to the route chosen and press OK to confirm and start guidance.



It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations", by selecting a junction, a town centre, geographic coordinates, or directly on the "Map".

Choose from address book **Choose from last destinations**

SETTING AND NAVIGATING TO MY "HOME ADDRESS"

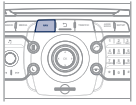
To be set as the "Home address", an address must first be entered in the address book, for example from "Destination input" / "Address input" then "Save to address book".

1



Press the NAV button twice to display the Navigation Menu.

Navigation Menu

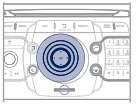


2



Select "Destination input" and confirm. Then select "Choose from address book" and confirm.

Destination input



3



Select your home address and confirm. Then select "Edit entry" and confirm.

Edit entry



4



Select "Set as Home address" and confirm to save.

Set as home address



To start navigation towards "Home", press NAV twice to display the Navigation Menu, select "Destination input" and confirm.
Then select "Navigate HOME" and confirm to start guidance.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

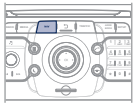
ROUTE OPTIONS

When the map is displayed on the screen, you can select "Map Settings" then "2D Map / 2.5D Map / 3D Map / North Up / Heading Up". The display of buildings in 3D mode depends on the progress in town mapping.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu

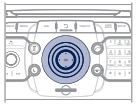


3



Select the "Route options" function and press OK to confirm.

Route options

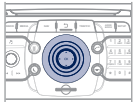


4



Select the "Route type" function and press OK to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

Route type

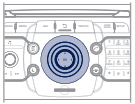


5



Select the "Route dynamics" function.
This function provides access to the "Traffic independent", "Semi-dynamic" and "Dynamic" options.

Route dynamics



6



Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the "Avoid" options (motorways, toll roads, ferries, tunnels).

Avoidance criteria

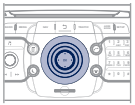


7



Turn the ring and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press OK to confirm.

Recalculate

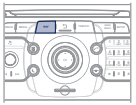


ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to or deleted from the route once the destination has been selected.

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

"Navigation" Menu



3 

Select the "Stopovers" function and press OK to confirm.

Stopovers



4 

Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press OK to confirm.

Add stopover



5 

Enter a new address, for example.

Address input



6 

Once the new address has been entered, select "Start route guidance" and press OK to confirm.

Start route guidance



7 

Position the stopover on the list and press OK to confirm.



8 Repeat operations 1 to 7 as many times as necessary then select "Recalculate" and press OK to confirm.

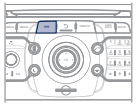
To change the stopovers, repeat operations 1 to 3 and select "Rearrange route" (select a stopover, delete it or move it on the list using the ring to change the order, confirm its new position and finish with "Recalculate").

SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POIs) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

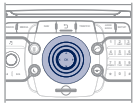
Navigation Menu



3 

Select the "POI search" function and press OK to confirm.

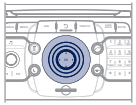
POI search



4 

Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.

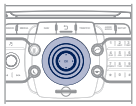
POI nearby



5 

Select the "POI near destination" function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.

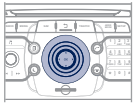
POI near destination



6 

Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.

POI in city



A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7 

Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.

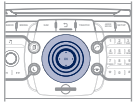
POI in country



8 

Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.

POI near route



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE



This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.

LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

- Service station
- LPG station
- Garage
- PEUGEOT
- Motor racing circuit
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Refreshment area
- Picnic area
- Cafeteria
- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Bank
- Vending machine
- Tennis court
- Swimming pool
- Golf course
- Winter sports resort
- Theatre
- Cinema
- Theme parks
- Hospital
- Pharmacy
- Police station
- School
- Post office
- Museum
- Tourist information
- Risk area*

* According to availability in the country.

UPDATING POIs

1



Download the "POIs" update file onto an SD card or USB memory stick from the Internet. This service is available at http://peugeot.navigation.com.

i

The files must be copied to the root on the chosen medium.

2



Insert the medium (SD card or USB memory stick) containing the POI database into the system's SD card reader or USB port.

3

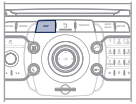


Press NAV, select Navigation Menu, then "Settings", then "Update personal POI".

Navigation Menu

Settings

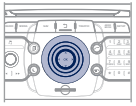
Update personal POI



4



Select the medium ("USB" or "SD-Card") used and press OK.



5

Successful downloading is confirmed by a message.
The system restarts.
The POIs version can be found in the SETUP \ System menu.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SPOKEN INSTRUCTION SETTINGS

1



When the navigation is displayed in the screen, press OK then select or deselect "Voice advice" to activate or deactivate the spoken guidance instructions.

Use the volume button to adjust the volume.



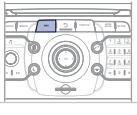
The volume of the Risk Areas POIs alert can only be adjusted during this type of alert.

POINTS OF INTEREST AND RISK AREAS SETTINGS

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu



3



Select the "Settings" function and press OK to confirm.

Settings

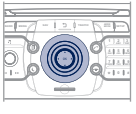


4



Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

POI categories on Map

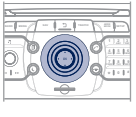


5



Select "Set parameters for risk areas" to gain access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

Set parameters for risk areas



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAYING OF THE TMC MESSAGES

The TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages provide information relating to traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver audibly and visually on the navigation map.

The guidance system can then suggest an alternative route.

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



The list of TMC messages appears under the Traffic Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the Traffic Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Traffic Menu



3



Select "Select preferred list" and press OK to confirm.



4



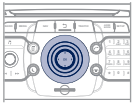
Select the filter of your choice:

Messages on route

All warning messages

Only warnings on route

All messages



5



Select "Geo. Filter".

Geo. Filter



When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographic filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map. The geographic filter follows the movement of the vehicle.

The filters are independent and their results are concealed.

We recommend:

- a filter over 6 miles (10 km) around the vehicle in heavy traffic,
- a filter over 30 miles (50 km) around the vehicle or a filter on the route on motorway journeys.

05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

RDS TA - the station transmits TA messages.

RDS TA - the station does not transmit TA messages.

RDS - TA messages are not activated.

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

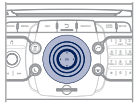
1 With the current audio source displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2 The shortcut menu for the source appears and gives access to:

TA

3 Select Traffic Announcements (TA) and press the dial to confirm and go to the associated settings.



06 RADIO

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

SELECTING A STATION

1

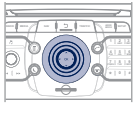


Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order.



Select the station required by turning the ring and press to confirm.





While listening to the radio, press buttons ◄◄ and ►► for the automatic search for a lower or higher frequency.



When the "RADIO" screen is displayed, turn the ring or use the 4-direction navigator to select the previous or next station on the list.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. A bleep confirms that it has been stored.

Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

RDS - REGIONAL MODE

1



When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press OK.



2

The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:

- **TA**
- **RDS**
- **Radiotext**
- **Regional prog.**
- **AM**



Select the function required and press OK to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 / WMA CD, MP3 / WMA SD CARD / USB PLAYER

INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

Connecting an IPod:

To play MP3 type files, connect the IPod using the USB port (limited functions).

To play ITunes files, connect the IPod using the auxiliary socket (AUX).

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted to FAT 32.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps.

It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

During play, exit the "SD-Card" or "USB" source before removing the SD card or the USB memory stick from its port.

To avoid any risk of theft, remove the SD card or the USB memory stick when you leave your vehicle with the roof open.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING / PLAYING
CD, MP3 / WMA CD, MP3 / WMA SD CARD / USB PLAYER

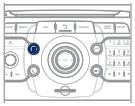
MP3 CDs, SD cards or USB peripherals are the compatible sources.

1 Insert the audio or MP3 CD in the player, the SD card in the card reader or the USB peripheral in the USB port. Play begins automatically.

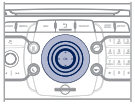


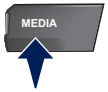
The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under "Media" Menu.

2  Press this button.



3  When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed, turn the ring up or down to select the previous or next compatible source.



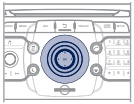
4 

Press the MEDIA button.



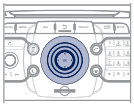
5  Press the MEDIA button again or select the "Media" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

"Media" Menu



6  Select the "Select media" function and press OK to confirm.

Select media



7  Select the music source required. Press OK to confirm. Play begins.



The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the parameters used. We recommend the ISO 9660 recording standard.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

JUKEBOX

COPYING A CD, A USB MEMORY STICK OR AN SD CARD ONTO THE HARD DISK

When copying is in progress, switching off the ignition will interrupt the process but it will resume directly when the ignition is switched on again.

1 Insert an audio / MP3 CD, a USB memory stick or an SD card.



! Check that the active MEDIA source is that of the medium used (CD, USB or SD card).

2 

Press the MEDIA button. Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



3 

Select "Jukebox management" then "Add files" and press OK at each step to confirm.

Add files



4 

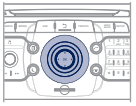
Select "Add files from MP3-Disc" for example and press OK to validate.

Add files from MP3-Disc



5 

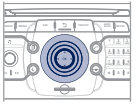
Select the tracks required then "Rip selection" or select all of the tracks using "Rip all".



6 

Select "[New folder]" to create a new folder or select an existing folder (created previously).

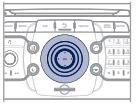
[New folder]



7 

"Do you want to change the names of the tracks that will be ripped?": select "Yes" to change them or "No".

Yes **No**



8 

To copy an MP3 CD, then select "Real time ripping", "Fast ripping" / "High quality (192 kbit/sec)" or "Standard quality (128 kbit/sec)" then select "Start ripping".



9 

Confirm the warning message by pressing "OK" to start the copy.

OK



07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

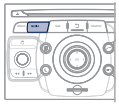
JUKEBOX
RENAMING OR DELETING AN ALBUM

Check that the active source is not the Jukebox in order to be able to rename or delete a track / folder.

1 Activate the playing of a source other than the Jukebox (CD, radio, etc...).

2 

Press the MEDIA button.



3 
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



4 
Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.

Jukebox management



5 
Select "Modify content" and press OK confirm.

Modify content



LISTENING TO THE JUKEBOX

1 

Press the MEDIA button.
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



2 
Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.



3 
Select "Play options" and press OK to confirm.
Select "Folders & Files" or "Playlists" then press OK to confirm.



Press the ESC button to return to the first file level.
Playlists can be created in the Jukebox.
Media Menu> Jukebox management> Create new playlist. Add the tracks required one by one then save the change. The "Playlists" play mode must then be selected.

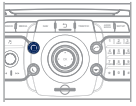
07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

VIEWING A VIDEO DVD

1 Insert the DVD in the player. Play begins automatically.



2 If the DVD does not appear on the screen, press the MODE button to gain access to the "MEDIA" screen which displays the DVD screen.



3 Press the MEDIA button to gain access to the DVD menu at any time, or to the functions of the Media Menu which adjust the video (brightness/ contrast, image format...).



The 4-direction navigator and the chromed ring allow you to move the DVD selection cursor. Change chapter by pressing the ⏭ or ⏮ button.

! Select the video source required ("DVD-Video", "External device (AV)"). Press OK to confirm. Play begins.

USING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE (AUX)

AUDIO / VIDEO / RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1 Connect the portable device (MP3 player, camcorder, camera…) to the RCA sockets (white and red for audio; yellow for video) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.

2 Press the MEDIA button then press it again or select the Media Menu function and press OK to confirm.



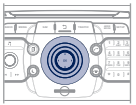
! If the external input is not activated, select "Ext. Device (Aux) management" to activate it.

3 Select "Select media" then "External device (AV)" and press OK to activate it.

External device



4 Select the AUX music source and press OK to confirm. Play begins automatically.



! The display and management of the controls is via the portable device.

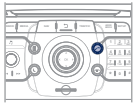
08 USING THE TELEPHONE

CHOOSING BETWEEN THE BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE / INTERNAL TELEPHONE

1



To activate the Bluetooth telephone or the internal telephone, press PICK UP.



2



Select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then choose between "Telephone off", "Use Bluetooth phone" or "Use internal phone". Press OK at each step to confirm.



!

The system can only be connected to one Bluetooth telephone and one SIM card (Internal telephone) at the same time.

In this case, the phone book is synchronised with the Bluetooth telephone.

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

PAIRING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE
FIRST CONNECTION

* The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to.

For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the Peugeot Connect Media must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone instructions).



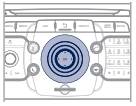
2 

Press the CALL button.



3 

If no telephone has been paired, the system prompts you to "Connect phone". Select "Yes" and press OK to confirm.



4 

Select "Search phone" and press OK to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

Search phone



5 

Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen of the system.



Once the telephone has been connected, the Peugeot Connect Media can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.





To pair another telephone, press the TEL button, then select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then "Connect Bluetooth phone" then select the telephone required.

Press OK at each step to confirm.





Pairing can be started from the telephone (refer to the telephone instructions).

To delete a pairing, press TEL, select "Connect phone" then "Delete pairing".

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

* The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.

For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the Peugeot Connect Media must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Once the telephone has been connected, the Peugeot Connect Media can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is visible to all.



2  Press the PICK UP button.



The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears in the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required then select "Connect phone" for a new connection. Select "Delete pairing" to cancel the connection to the telephone.

USING THE INTERNAL TELEPHONE WITH A SIM CARD

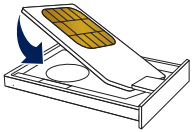
If you have declined to use the internal telephone for personal calls, you can still connect a Bluetooth telephone to receive your calls on the vehicle's audio system.

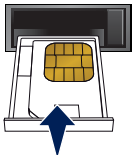
1



Extract the holder by pressing the eject button.

2





Install the SIM card in the holder and then insert it in the slot.

3

To remove the SIM card, repeat step 1.

i

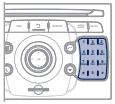
For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the SIM card installation operations must be carried out when stationary.

4



Enter the PIN code on the keypad then select OK and confirm.

Remember PIN



When entering your PIN code, tick the "Remember PIN" tab to allow use of the telephone without having to enter this code when it is used subsequently.

5



The system asks "Do you want to switch to the internal phone?", select "Yes" if you wish to use your SIM card for your personal calls. Otherwise, only the emergency call and the services will use the SIM card.



Once the SIM card has been installed, the system can synchronise the address book and the call list.

This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

Operating the telephone while driving is prohibited. It is recommended that you park safely or use in preference the steering mounted controls.

RECEIVING A CALL

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

2 

Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing OK.

Yes No

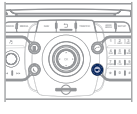


The PICK UP button accepts, the HANG UP button rejects the incoming call.

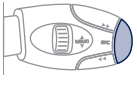
3 

To hang up, press the HANG UP button or press OK and select "End call" then confirm by pressing OK.

End call



Press the end of the steering mounted control to accept the call or end the call in progress.



MAKING A CALL

1 

Press the PICK UP button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under Phone menu. You can select a number and press OK to make the call.

2 

Select the Phone menu function and press OK to confirm.

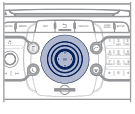
Phone menu



3 

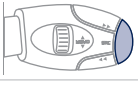
Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

Dial number



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The Peugeot Connect Media can record up to 4 096 entries.

Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to open the address book.



It is always possible to start a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle as a safety measure.

09 SCREEN MENU MAP

MAIN FUNCTION

- **OPTION A**
  - **option A1**
  - **option A2**
- **OPTION B...**

"Traffic" Menu

- **Select preferred list**
  - **Messages on route**
  - **Only warnings on route**
  - **All warning messages**
  - **All messages**
  - **Geo. Filter**
    - Deactivate PIN
    - Within 2 miles (3 km)
    - Within 3 miles (5 km)
    - Within 6 miles (10 km)
    - Within 30 miles (50 km)
  - **Read out settings**
    - **On confirmation**
    - **Incoming messages**
  - **TMC station information**

"Media" Menu

- **Select media**
  - **Audio CD / MP3-Disc / DVD-Audio / DVD-Video**
  - **Jukebox (Folders & Files)**
  - **SD-Card**
  - **USB**
  - **External device (audio/AV)**
- **Jukebox management**
  - **Add files**
  - **Create folder**
  - **Modify content**
  - **Edit playlist**
  - **Play options**
    - Folders & Files
    - Playlists
  - **Memory capacity**
- **Sound settings**
- **Refer to the "Sound settings" menu details of which are shown on the next page.**
- **Video settings**
  - **Aspect ratio**
  - **Menu language**
  - **Display**
    - Brightness
    - Contrast
    - Colour

- **AUX standard**
- **Reset video settings**
- **Ext. Device (Aux) management**
- **Off / Audio / Audio and Video (AV)**



"Radio" Menu

- **Waveband**
  - **FM**
  - **AM**
- **Manual tune**
- **Sound settings**
  - **Refer to the "Sound settings" menu below.**

"Sound settings" Menu

- **Balance / Fader**
- **Bass / Treble**
- **Equalizer**
  - **Linear**
  - **Classic**
  - **Jazz**
  - **Rock/Pop**
  - **Techno**
  - **Vocal**
- **Mute rear speakers**
- **Loudness**
- **Speed dependent volume**
- **Reset sound settings**



"Navigation" Menu

- **Abort guidance / Resume guidance**
- **Destination input**
  - **Address input**
    - Country
    - City
    - Street
    - House number
    - Start route guidance
    - Postal code
    - Save to address book
    - Intersection
    - City district
    - Geo position
    - Map
  - **Navigate HOME**
  - **Choose from last destinations**
  - **Choose from address book**
- **Stopovers**
  - **Add stopover**
    - Address input
    - Navigate HOME
    - Choose from address book
    - Choose from last destinations
  - **Rearrange route**
  - **Replace stopover**
  - **Delete stopover**

- **Recalculate**
  - Fast route
  - Short route
  - Optimized route
- **POI search**
  - **POI nearby**
  - **POI near destination**
  - **POI in city**
  - **POI in country**
  - **POI near route**
- **Route options**
  - **Route type**
    - POI near destination
    - Short route
    - Optimized route
    - Subscr. service
- **Settings**
  - **Route dynamics**
    - Traffic independent
    - Semi-dynamic
    - Dynamic
  - **Avoidance criteria**
    - Avoid motorways
    - Avoid toll roads
    - Avoid tunnels
    - Avoid ferries
  - **Recalculate**



"Address book" Menu

- **Create new entry**
- **Show memory status**
- **Export address book**
- **Delete all voice entries**
- **Delete all entries**
- **Delete folder "My Addresses"**



"Phone" menu

- **Dial number**
- **Dial from address book**
- **Call lists**
- **Messages**
- **Select phone**
  - **Telephone off**
  - **Use Bluetooth phone**
  - **Use internal phone**
  - **Connect Bluetooth phone**
    - Search phone
      - Disconnect phone
      - Rename phone
      - Delete pairing
      - Delete all pairings
      - Show details

- **Settings**
  - **Automatic answering system**
  - **Select ring tone**
  - **Phone / Ring tone volume**
  - **Enter mailbox number**
  - **Internal phone settings**
  - **Automatically accept call**
  - **Signal waiting call (?)**
  - **Show status**
  - **Activate waiting call**
  - **Deactivate waiting call**
  - **Call forward (?)**
  - **Show status**
  - **Activate call forward**
  - **Deactivate call forward**
  - **Suppress own number**
  - **Select network**
  - **Set network automatically**
  - **Set network manually**
  - **Search for networks**
  - **PIN settings**
  - **Change PIN**
    - Activate PIN
    - Deactivate PIN
  - **Remember PIN**
  - **SIM-card memory status**

SETUP

"SETUP" Menu

- **Language & Speech**
  - **Menu language**
    - Deutsch
    - English
    - Español
    - Français
    - Italiano
    - Nederlands
    - Polski
    - Portuguese
  - **Voice control**
    - Voice control active
    - Tutorial
      - Basics
      - Examples
      - Tips
    - Speaker adaptation
      - New speaker adaptation
      - Delete speaker adaptation
  - **Voice output volume**
- **Date & Time**
  - **Set date & time**
  - **Date format**
  - **Time format**

- **Display**
  - **Brightness**
  - **Colour**
    - Steel
    - blue light (only in day mode)
    - Orange Ray
    - Blue Flame
  - **Map colour**
    - Day mode for map
    - Night mode for map
    - Auto. Day/Night for map

- **Units**
  - **Temperature**
    - Celsius
    - Fahrenheit
  - **Metric / Imperial**
    - km
    - Miles
- **System**
  - **Factory reset**
  - **Software version**
  - **Automatic scrolling**

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "Linear" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

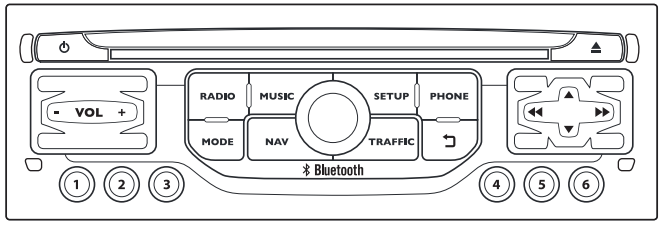
QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press RADIO, select Radio Menu then "Waveband" to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
"TA" is selected. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.	The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD/DVD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.	Wait until the CD/DVD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.
The "Risk areas" audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate the audible warning on Navigation Menu, Settings, Set parameters for risk areas.
	The alert volume is set to minimum.	Increase the volume of the alert when passing a "Risk area".
Does the emergency call function work without a SIM card?	No, as certain national regulations impose the presence of a SIM card in order to make an emergency call.	Insert a valid SIM card in the slot.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the exclusion criteria on the Navigation Menu ("Route options" - "Avoidance criteria").
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.	This phenomenon is normal.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the equipment may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check that your telephone is visible.
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D), to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
The system does not play the DVD.	The region protection may not be compatible.	Insert DVDs which have compatible region protection.
I cannot copy the CD to the Jukebox.	The wrong source is selected.	Change the active source to CD.
	The CD is copy-protected.	It is normal that a protected CD cannot be copied.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending of the SMS to the system.	Use your SIM card and the internal telephone.
	The SIM card used is a twin card.	Use the original SIM card to receive the SMS.
I cannot update the risk area POIs.	The Navigation Menu - "Update personal POI" is not displayed.	Check that the medium used for the update (SD card or USB memory stick) is inserted correctly.
	An error message is displayed at the end of the procedure.	- Start the procedure again in full. - Consult a PEUGEOT dealer if the problem persists. - Check that the data on the MEDIUM is supplied by an official partner of PEUGEOT.
The voice frequencies (DTMF) are not active when I am communicating and I press numbers on the keypad.	The numeric buttons on the keypad are only active for calls if the display is in telephone mode.	To activate them, press the MODE button until the telephone is displayed on the screen.
An risk area which does not concern me is displayed on the screen.	The risk areas are displayed near a point defined on the map and in relation to a direction of travel.	The alert may be triggered when travelling under a road or near a road which is a Risk area.

400
400
500
400
400
500



PEUGEOT CONNECT Navigation (RT6)

SATELLITE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
MULTIMEDIA BLUETOOTH
TELEPHONE AUDIO SYSTEM

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01	First steps - Control panel	p.	264
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	266
03	General operation	p.	267
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	269
05	Traffic information	p.	282
06	Using the telephone	p.	285
07	Radio	p.	295
08	Music media players	p.	298
09	Audio settings	p.	304
10	Configuration	p.	305
11	Screen menu map	p.	306
	Frequently asked questions	p.	310

Long press: open the "**Audio settings**" menu: music ambience, bass, treble, loudness, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume adjustment.

Selection and confirmation OK dial:

Selection of an item on the screen or in a list or a menu, then confirmation with a short press.

Other than for menus and lists, a short press displays a contextual menu depending on the current screen.

Rotation with map displayed: zoom the map scale in and out.

Access to the "**RADIO**" menu and display the list of stations received.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the radio tuner source.

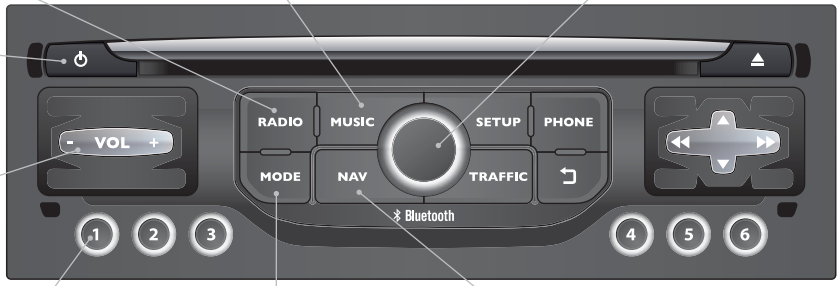
Access to the "**MUSIC**" menu, and display of the CD/MP3/Apple® tracks and folders.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the "**MEDIA** (CD/USB/iPod/Streaming/AUX)" sources.

Short press without the engine running: on / off.

Short press with the engine running: audio source off / restore.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including TA messages and navigation instructions).



Short press: select pre-set radio station.

Long press: pre-set the current station.

MODE button: Selection of the type of permanent display.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

Access to the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu and display the recent destinations.

01 FIRST STEPS

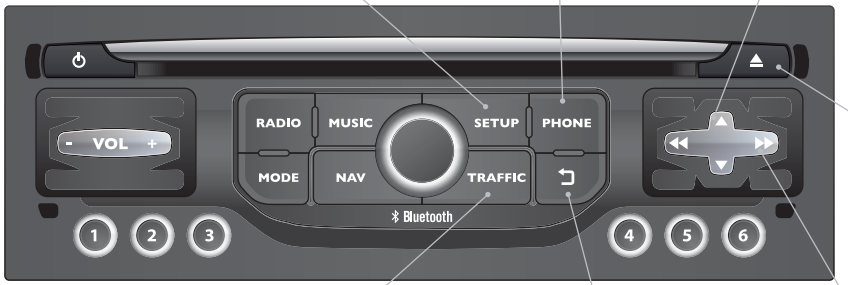
Open the "**Configuration**" menu.

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the navigation demonstration mode.

Open the"**Telephone**" menu and display the list of recent calls or accept an incoming call.

Select:
- the previous/next line in a list or menu.
- the previous / next media folder.
- step by step selection of the previous/ next radio frequency.
- the previous / next MP3 folder.

Move up/down, in "**Move the map**" mode.



Continuous press: reinitialisation of the system.

Open the "**Traffic information**" menu and display the current traffic alerts.

Abandon the current operation, up one level in the menu.

Long press: return to the permanent display.

Select:
- the next lower / higher radio frequency automatically.
- the previous / next CD track, MP3 track or media.
- the left / right of the screen when a menu is displayed.

Move left / right in "**Move the map**" mode.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

RADIO: change to the next radio station in the list.

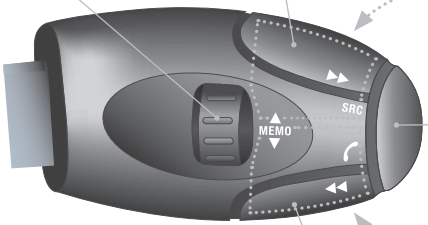
Long press: automatic search for a higher frequency.

CD: select the next track.

CD: continuous press: fast forward play.

RADIO: select the previous/next preset station.

Select the next entry in the address book.



Volume increase.

Change the audio source.

Start a call from the address book.

Call/End call on the telephone.

Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the address book.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

RADIO: change to the previous radio station in the list.

Long press: automatic search for a lower frequency.

CD: select the previous track.

CD: continuous press: fast reverse.

03 GENERAL OPERATION



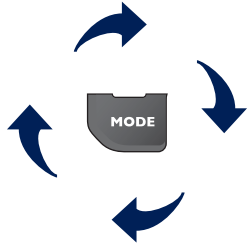
Press the **MODE** button several times in succession for access to the following displays:

"RADIO"



"TELEPHONE"
(If conversation in progress)







"MAP IN WINDOW"
(If navigation guidance in progress)



"FULL SCREEN MAP"



SETUP: **PARAMETERS** date and time, display configuration, sound.



Changing the audio source:
RADIO: RADIO broadcasts.
MUSIC: playing MUSIC.



For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO CONTEXT



A press on the dial gives access to short-cut menus according to the display in the screen.

RADIO:

1 **Activate / Deactivate TA**

1 **Activate / Deactivate RDS**

1 **Change waveband**

1 **TA**

2 **FM**

2 **AM**

TELEPHONE (call in progress):

1 **Private mode**

1 **Put call on hold**

1 **DTMF ring tones**

1 **Hang up**

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS, CD or USB (according to media):

Play modes:

1 **Normal**

1 **Random**

1 **Random on all media**

1 **Repetition**

FULL SCREEN MAP OR IN A NEW WINDOW:

1 **Stop / Restore guidance**

1 **Select destination**

2 **Enter an address**

2 **Directory**

2 **GPS coordinates**

1 **Divert route**

1 **Move the map**

2 **Info. on location**

2 **Select as destination**

2 **Select as stage**

2 **Save this place (contacts)**

2 **Quit map mode**

1 **Guidance criteria**

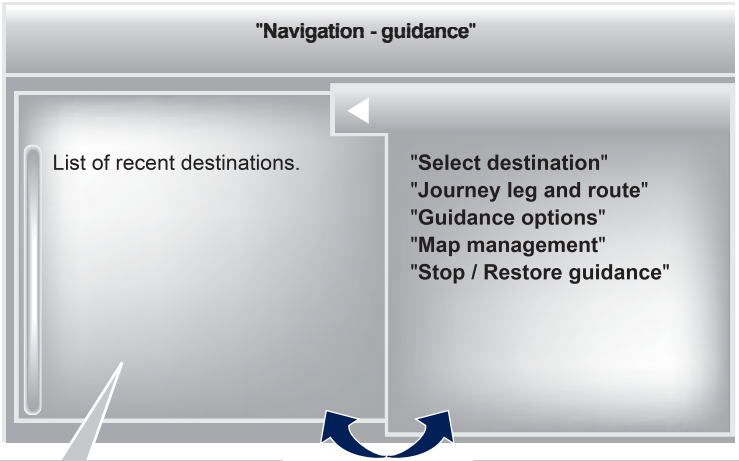
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Access to the "NAVIGATION" menu



Press **NAV**.

A short press on the end of the lighting control stalk repeats the last navigation message.

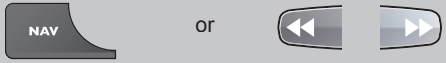


Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for mapping updates.

To delete the list of recent destinations, select "**Guidance options**" in the navigation menu then select "**Delete last destinations**" and confirm. Select "**Yes**" then confirm.

Deleting just one destination is not possible.

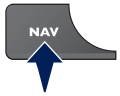
Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



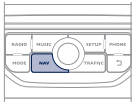
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SELECTING A DESTINATION

TOWARDS A NEW DESTINATION

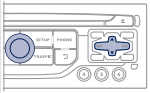
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



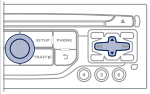
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Enter an address**" and confirm.



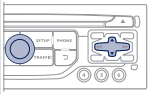
3 

Select the "**Country**" function then confirm.



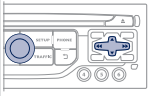
4 

Select "**Town**" function then confirm to enter the destination town.



5 

Select the letters in the name of the town one at a time, confirming each one with the dial.

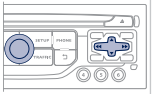


6 Selection the town from the list offered, then confirm

A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed directly by selecting and confirming "**List**" on the screen.

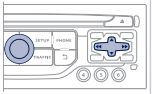
7 

Turn the dial and select "**OK**" then confirm.



8 

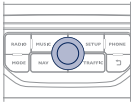
If possible, enter the "**Road**" and "**N°/X**" information in the same way.



Select "**Archive**" to save the address entered in a contact file.
The system allows up to 400 contact files to be recorded.

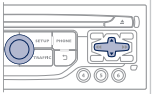
9 

Confirm "**OK**" to start guidance.



10 

Select the guidance criteria: "**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**" or optimised "**Distance/Time**", then select the desired restriction criteria: "**With tolls**", "**With Ferry**", or "**Traffic info**" then confirm "**OK**".



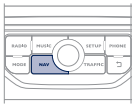
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SELECTING A DESTINATION

TO ONE OF THE RECENT DESTINATIONS

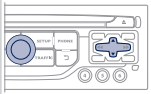
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



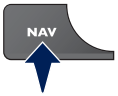
2 

Select the desired destination and confirm to start guidance.

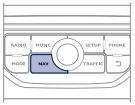


TOWARDS A CONTACT IN THE CONTACTS DIRECTORY

Navigation towards a contact imported from your telephone is only possible if the address is compatible with the system.

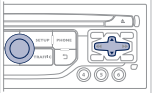
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



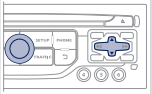
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Directory**" and confirm.



3 

Selection the desired destination from your contacts and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.

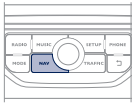


04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

TOWARDS GPS COORDINATES

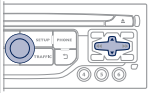
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



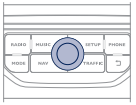
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**GPS coordinates**" and confirm.



3 

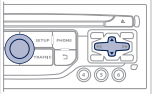
Enter the GPS coordinates and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



TOWARDS A POINT ON THE MAP

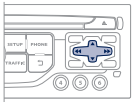
1 

With the map displayed, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Move the map**" and confirm.



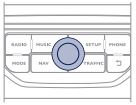
2 

Move the cursor using the control to identify the desired destination.



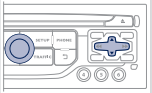
3 

Press **OK** to display the contextual menu for "**Move the map**" mode.



4 

Select "**Select as destination**" or "**Select as stage**" and confirm.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

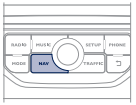
TOWARDS POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1



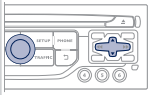
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select the "**Enter an address**" function and confirm, then select **Select destination** and confirm.



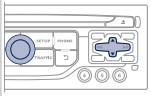
3



To select a POI close to your current location, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**Around the current place**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a stage on the route, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**On the route**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a destination, first enter the country and town (see "Towards a new destination"), select "**POI**" and confirm, finally select "**Near**" and confirm.

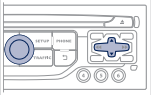


Select "**Search by Name**" to search for POIs by name and not by proximity.

4



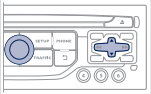
Search for POIs in the categories suggested in the following pages.



5



Select the POI and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

- Service station
- Garage
- PEUGEOT
- Motor racing circuit
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Cafeteria
- Bed and breakfast
- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Bank
- Vending machine
- Sports complex, sports centre, sports ground
- Swimming pool
- Winter sports resort
- Entertainment, show
- Cinema
- Theme parks
- Hospital, Chemist, Vet
- Police station
- School
- University
- Town hall
- Post office
- Museum, Culture, Theatre, Historic monument
- Tourist information, Tourist attraction
- Risk area*

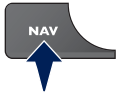
The detailed procedure for updating POIs can be found at "http://peugeot.navigation.com".

* According to availability in the country.

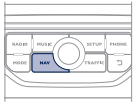
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ALERT PARAMETERS
RISK AREAS

1



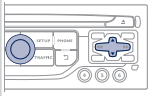
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm, then select "**Set parameters for risk areas**" and confirm.



3

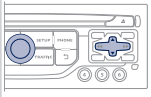


Select:

- "Visual alert"
- "Audible alert"
- "Alert only in guidance"
- "Overspeed alarm only".

The choice of time of notification defines how long in advance that Risk area warnings are given.

Select "**OK**" to confirm the screen.



!

These functions are only available if risk areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.

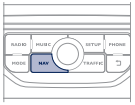
The detailed procedure for updating risk area POIs can be found at www.peugeot.com.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ADDING A STAGE

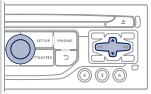
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

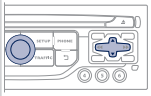
Select "**Journey leg and route**" then confirm.



3 

Select "**Add a stage**" then confirm

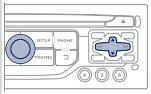
The address of the stage is entered as a destination, by "**Enter an address**", a contact in "**Directory**", or "**Previous destinations**".



4 

Select "**Close to**" a route passing close to the stage or "**Strict**" for a route passing through the stage.

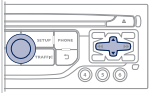
Confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance, and give a general indication of the guidance route.



ORGANISING STAGES

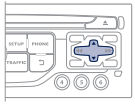
1 

To organise stages, carry out operations 1 to 2 again, then select "**Order/delete journey legs**" and confirm.



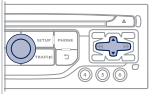
2 

Select the stage that you want to move in the order.



3 

Select and confirm to save the modifications.



Select "**Delete**" to delete the stage.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

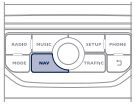
ROUTE OPTIONS

CALCULATION CRITERIA

1



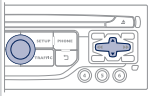
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



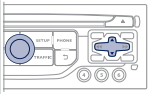
3



Select "**Define calculation criteria**" and confirm.

This function allows modification of:

- the guidance criteria: ("**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**", "**Distance/Time**"),
- the exclusion criteria: ("**With tolls**" or "**With Ferry**"),
- traffic avoidance: ("**Traffic info**").



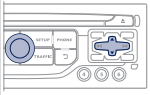
i

If traffic avoidance (Traffic info) is selected, the system suggests an alternative route if there is a delay on the guidance route.

4



Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

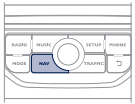
MAP MANAGEMENT

SELECTING THE POINTS OF INTEREST DISPLAYED ON THE MAP

1



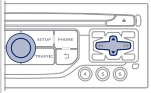
Press **NAV** to display the **"Navigation - guidance"** menu.



2



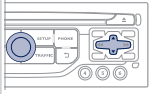
Select **"Map management"** and confirm.



3



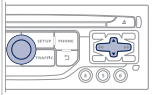
Select **"Map details"** and confirm.



4



Select from the various categories the ones that you want to display on the screen.

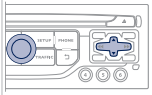


Select **"By default"** to have only **"Oil stations, garages"** and **"Accident-prone area"** appear on the map (if installed in the system).

5



Select **"OK"** then confirm and select **"OK"** again then confirm to save the modifications.



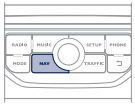
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

MAP ORIENTATION

1



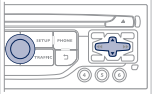
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



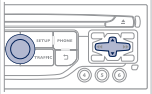
Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Map orientation**" and confirm.

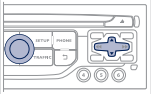


4



Select:

- "**Vehicle direction**" to have the map follow the direction of travel,
- "**North direction**" to keep the map always North up,
- "**Perspective view**" to display a perspective view.



The colour of the map, different from the day and night mode, is configured in the "**SETUP**" menu.

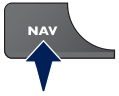
Street names are visible on the map from the 100 m scale.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

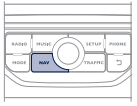
ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE SPEECH SYNTHESIS

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME/DEACTIVATION

The volume of messages can be adjusted during the transmission of the message using the volume adjustment control.

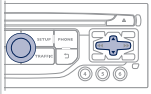
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



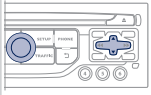
2 

Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



3 

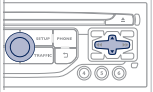
Select "**Set speech synthesis**" and confirm.



The volume setting of guidance messages is also accessible via the "**SETUP**" / "**Voice synthesis**" menu.

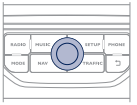
4 

Select the volume graph and confirm.



5 

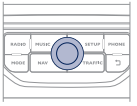
Adjust the volume to the desired level and confirm.



Select "**Deactivate**" to deactivate voice messages.

6 

Select "**OK**" and press the dial to confirm.

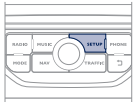


MALE VOICE / FEMALE VOICE

1



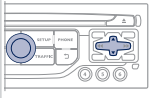
Press **SETUP** to display the configuration menu.



2



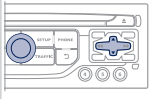
Select "**Voice synthesis**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Select male voice**" or "**Select female voice**" then confirm "**Yes**" to activate a male or female voice. The system restarts.

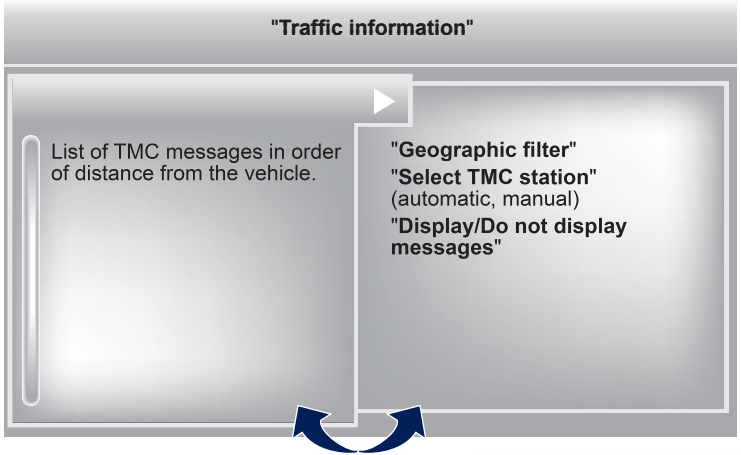


05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Access to the "TRAFFIC INFORMATION" menu



Press "**TRAFFIC**".



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAY OF TMC MESSAGES

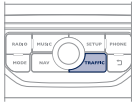
TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages contain information on traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver in the form of audible announcements and symbols on the navigation map.

The navigation system can then suggest an alternative route to avoid a traffic problem.

1



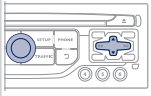
Press the **TRAFFIC** button to display the **Traffic information** menu.



2



Select the "**Geographic filter**" function and confirm.



3

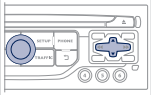


The system offers a choice of:

- "**Retain all the messages**",

or

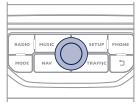
- "**Retain the messages**"
  - "**Around the vehicle**", (confirm the mileage to modify and select the distance),
  - "**On the route**".



4

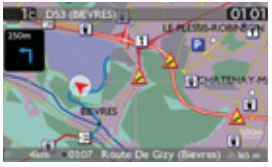


Confirm "**OK**" to save the modifications.



We recommend:

- a filter on the route and
- a filter around the vehicle of:
  - 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
  - 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

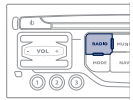
- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

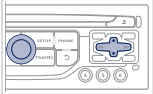
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

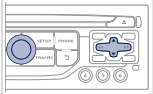
Press **RADIO** to display the **"FM / AM band"** menu.



2 
Select **"Guidance options"** then confirm.



3 
Activate or deactivate **"TA"** then confirm.



The volume setting for TA messages can be adjusted only during the transmission of this type of alert.

Activate or deactivate the function at any time by pressing the button. During a message, press the button to interrupt it.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Access to the "TELEPHONE" menu



Press **PHONE**.

"Telephone"

List of recent calls sent and received with the telephone connected to the system.

"Dial"
"Directory of contacts"
"Telephone options"
"Bluetooth functions"
"Hang up"
(call in progress)

In the top bar of the permanent display

- No telephone connected.
- Telephone connected.
- Incoming call.
- Outgoing call.
- Synchronisation of address book in progress.
- Telephone call in progress.

To make a call, select a number in the list and confirm **"OK"** to start the call.

Connecting a different telephone deletes the list of recent calls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

PAIRING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE FIRST CONNECTION

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio unit must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

1



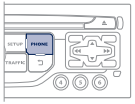
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "shown to all" (telephone configuration).



2



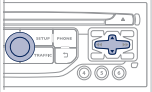
Press this button.



3



Select "**Bluetooth functions**" and confirm.

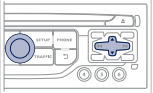


4



Select "**Peripherals search**" and confirm.

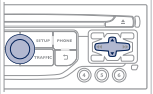
The list of peripherals detected is displayed. Wait until the "**Connect**" button is available.



5



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list of devices detected then select "**Connect**" and confirm.



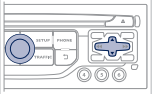
6



The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in "**Hands-free mode**" (telephone only),
- in "**Audio**" mode (streaming: playing music files on the telephone),
- or "**All**" (for selection of both modes).

Select "**OK**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

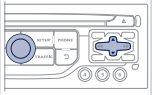
The "**Hands-free mode**" should be used in preference if "Streaming" is not desired.

The ability of the system to connect in only one mode depends on the telephone. The two modes may both connect by default.

7



Select a code for the connection then confirm "**OK**".



8

Enter the same code on the telephone then accept the connection.



Then accept automatic connection on the telephone to allow the telephone to reconnect automatically every time the vehicle is started.

Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

On return to the vehicle,the last telephone connected automatically reconnects, within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition (Bluetooth activated and visible).

To modify the automatic connection mode, remove the pairing and pair the telephone again with the desired mode.

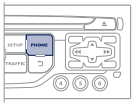
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

DIRECTORY / SYNCHRONIZING CONTACTS

1



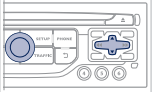
Press **PHONE** then select "**Contacts management**" and confirm.



2a



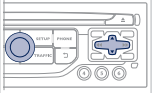
Select "**New contact**" to enter a new contact.



2b



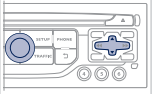
Select "**Sort by Name/First name**" to choose the order in which they appear.



2c



Select "**Delete all contacts**" to delete the contacts saved in the system.

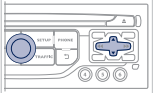


2d



Select "**Import all the entries**" to import all the contacts in the telephone and save them in the system.

Once imported, a contact remains visible whatever telephone is connected.

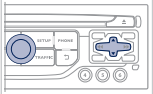


2e



Selection "**Synchronization options**":

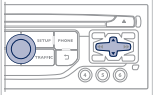
- No synchronization: only the contacts saved in the system (always present).
- Display telephone contacts: only the contacts saved in the telephone.
- Display SIM card contacts: only the contacts saved on the SIM card.
- Display all phone contacts: contacts on the SIM card and in the telephone.



2f



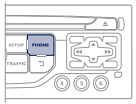
Select "**Contact mem. status**" to see the number of contacts saved in the system or imported, and the free memory.



MANAGING CONTACTS

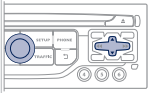
1 

Press **PHONE** then select "**Directory of contacts**" and confirm.



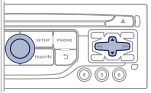
2 

Select the desired contact and confirm.



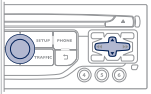
3 

Select "**Call**" to start the call.



4 

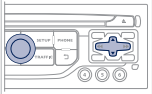
Select "**Open**" to view an external contact or modify a contact saved in the system.



It is necessary to import an external contact to modify the record. It will be saved in the system. It is not possible to modify or delete contacts in the telephone or the SIM card via the Bluetooth connection.

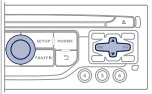
5 

Select "**Import**" to copy one contact to the system.



6 

Select "**Delete**" to delete a contact saved in the system.



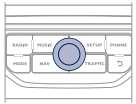
7 

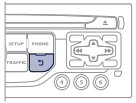
Select **OK**

or



press the back button to exit this menu.





06 USING THE TELEPHONE

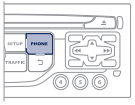
MAKING A CALL

Use of the telephone is not recommended while driving. We recommended that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

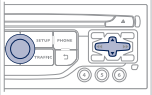
CALLING A NEW NUMBER

1 

Press **PHONE** twice.

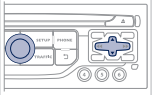


2 
Select "**Dial**" then confirm.



3 
Dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad selecting each number in turn.

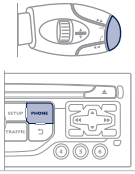
Confirm "**OK**" to make the call.



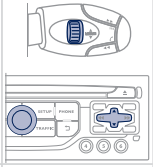
CALLING A CONTACT

1 

Press **TEL** or twice on **PHONE**.

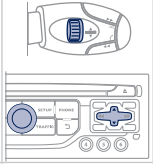


2 
Select "**Directory of contacts**" then confirm.

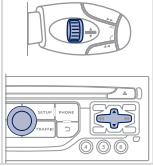


3 
Select the desired contact and confirm.

If access was via the **PHONE** button, select "**Call**" and confirm.



4 
Select the number and confirm to start the call.



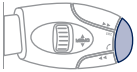
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

CALLING A RECENTLY ENTERED NUMBER

1



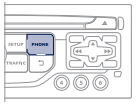
Press **TEL**, select "**Call list**" and confirm,



or



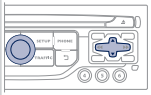
press **PHONE** to display the calls log.



2



Select the desired number and confirm.



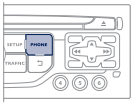
To erase the calls log, press **PHONE** twice, select "**Phone functions**" and confirm then select "**Delete calls log**" and confirm.

ENDING A CALL

1a



Press **PHONE** then select "**OK**" to end the call.



1b



Or make a long press on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1c



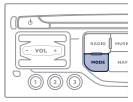
Or make two short presses on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1d

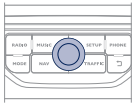


Or press the **MODE** button, as many times as necessary, until the telephone screen is displayed.





Press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu then select "**Hang up**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

RECEIVING A CALL

1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

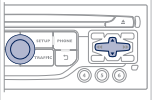
2



"Yes" to accept the call is selected by default.

Press **"OK"** to accept the call.

Select **"No"** and confirm to reject the call.





A short press on **TEL** accepts an incoming call.

A long press on **TEL** rejects an incoming call.



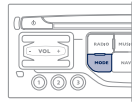
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

OPTIONS DURING A CALL*

1

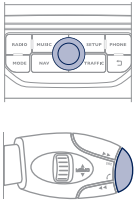


During a call, press the **MODE** button several times to select display of the telephone screen, then press "**OK**" to open the contextual menu.





Or make a short press on this button.

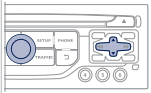


2a



Select "**Private mode**" and confirm to take the call on the handset.

Or select "**Hands-free mode**" and confirm to take the call via the vehicle's speakers.

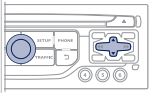


2b



Select "**Put call on hold**" and confirm to put the current call on hold.

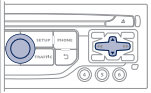
Or select "**Resume the call**" and confirm to resume the call on hold.



2c



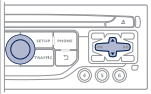
Select "**DTMF ring tones**" to use the numerical keypad, so as to navigate through the menu of an interactive vocal server.



2d

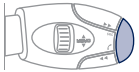


Select "**Hang up**" to end the call.





it is possible to hold a 3-way conference call by making 2 calls in succession*. Select "**Conference mode call**" in the contextual menu accessible using this button.



* Depending on the compatibility of the phone and your service plan.

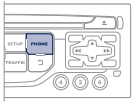
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

MANAGING PAIRED TELEPHONES

1



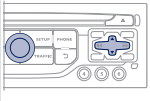
Press **PHONE** twice.



2



Select "**Bluetooth functions**".



3

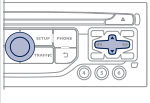


Select "**List of the paired peripherals**" and confirm.

It is possible to:

- "**Connect**" or "**Disconnect**" the selected telephone,
- delete the pairing of the selected telephone.

It is also possible to select all pairings.

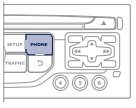


CHANGING THE RING TONE

1



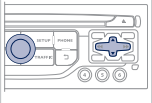
Press **PHONE** twice.



2



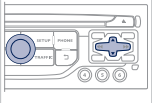
Select "**Phone functions**" and confirm.



3



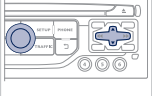
Select "**Ring options**" and confirm.



4



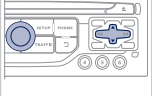
You can adjust the volume and the type of ring tone.



5

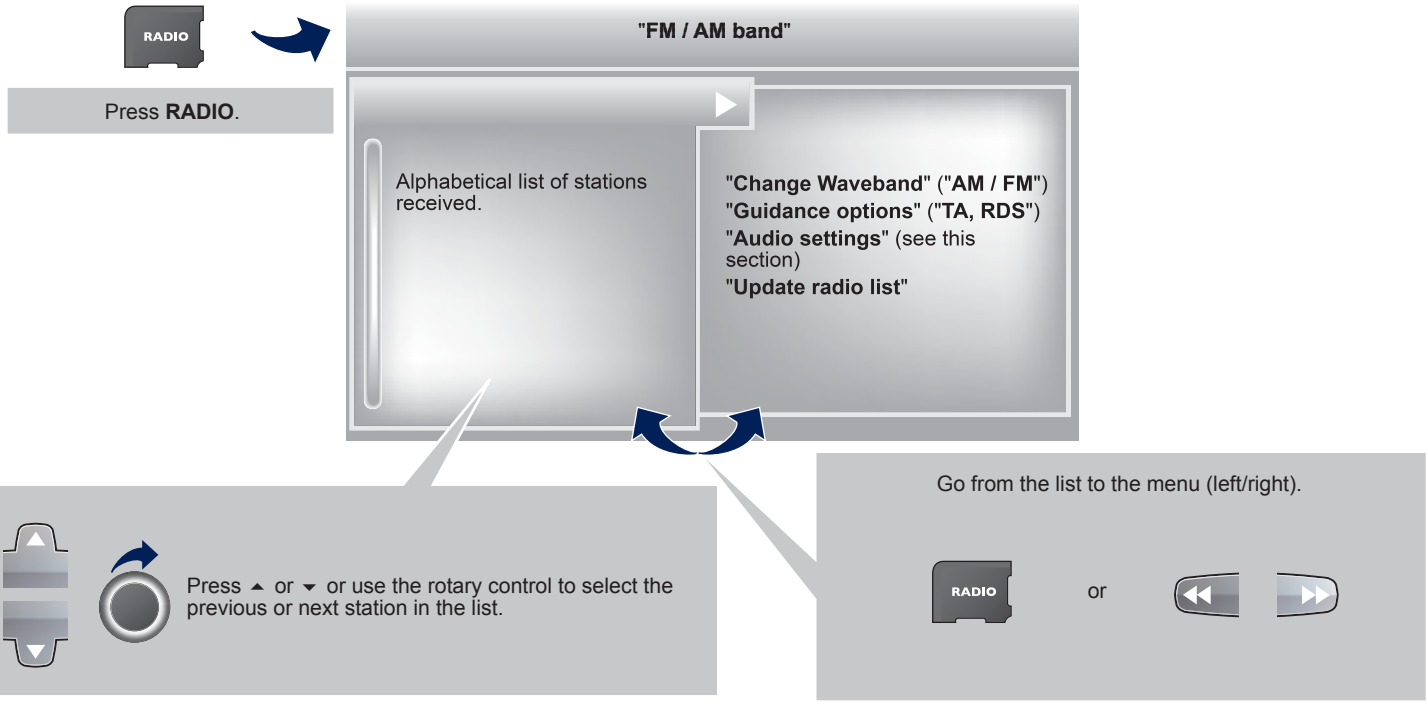


Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the changes.



07 RADIO

Access to the "RADIO" menu



07 RADIO

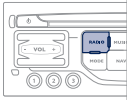
CHANGING BAND

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a fault with the audio system.

1



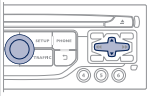
Press **RADIO** or **OK** to display the contextual menu.



2



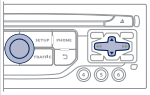
Select "**Change waveband**".



3



Select "**AM / FM**" and confirm.



SELECTING A STATION



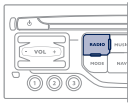
The quality of reception is represented by the number of active waves in this symbol.

1a



By alphabetical list

Press **RADIO**, select the station of your choice and confirm.



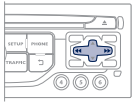
1b



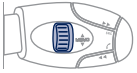
By automatic frequency search

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ for the automatic search for a lower or higher radio frequency.

Or turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.





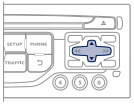


1c



By manual frequency search

Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust the radio frequency step by step.



07 RADIO

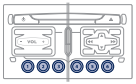
PRESETTING A STATION

1



After selecting a station, press one of the buttons on the numerical keypad for 2 seconds to preset the current station.

An audible signal confirms that the station has been preset.





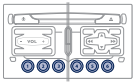
2

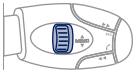


Press the button on the numerical keypad to recall a preset station.

Or press then turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.







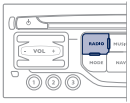
ACTIVATE / DEACTIVATE RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1



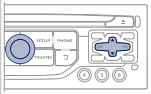
Press **RADIO**.



2



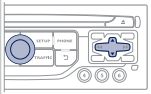
Select "**Guidance options**" then confirm.



3



Activate or deactivate "**RDS**" then confirm.

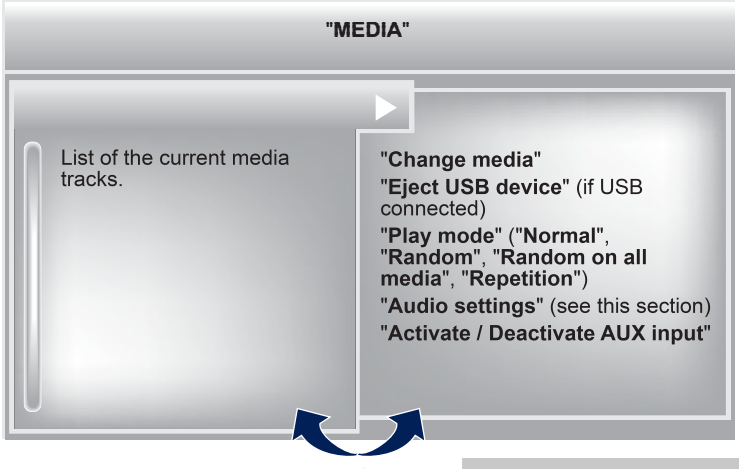


08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Access to the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYER" menu



Press **MUSIC**.



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 CD / USB PLAYER

INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

WMA files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g. : " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The system supports USB mass storage or iPod devices via the USB port (suitable cable not supplied).

If a partitioned USB memory key is connected to the system, only the first partition is recognised.

Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.

The number of tracks is limited to 2000 maximum, 999 tracks per folder.

If the current consumption at the USB port exceeds 500 mA, the system goes into protection mode and deactivates the port.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).





In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted FAT 16 or 32.

The system does not support the operation of an Apple® player and a USB memory stick connected at the same time.

It is recommended that official Apple® USB cables are used to ensure correct operation.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SOURCES

Insert the CD in the player, insert the USB memory stick in the USB player or connect the USB peripheral to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied)



The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

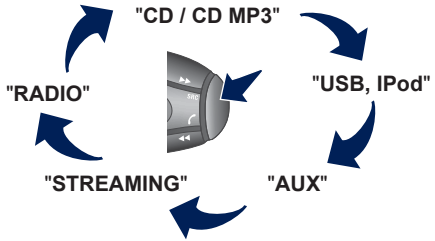


The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. However, the system memorises these lists and if they are not modified, the loading time will be shorter.

Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

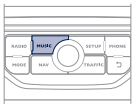
SELECTION OF SOURCE

The **SOURCE** button on the steering mounted controls allows a direct change to the next media source.



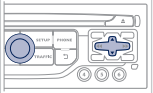
1 

Press **MUSIC** to display the **"MEDIA"** menu.



2 

Select "**Following media source**" and confirm.



Repeat the operation as many times as necessary to obtain the desired media source (except for radio which is accessible either with **SOURCE** or **RADIO**).

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING A TRACK

Previous track.	
Next track.	
Previous folder.	
Next folder.	
Fast forward.	Long press 
Fast backward.	Long press 
Pause: long press on **SRC**.	

MUSIC: List of USB or CD tracks or folders	
Up or down in the list.	
Confirm, next menu level.	
Up one menu level.	 

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CONNECTING APPLE® PLAYERS

1 Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

2 Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.
The "Shuffle tracks" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random" mode on the audio system.
The "Shuffle albums" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random all" on the audio system.
"Shuffle tracks" is restored by default on each connection.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.
The list of devices compatible with software versions is available from PEUGEOT dealers.

AUDIO STREAMING

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

1 Connect the telephone: see "USING THE TELEPHONE".
Select "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

2 If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

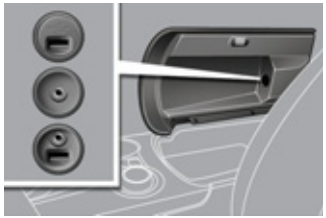
Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX) JACK AUDIO/USB CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

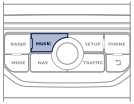
Connect the portable device (MP3, WMA player…) to the JACK auxiliary audio socket or USB port using a suitable cable.



2



Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MUSIC**" menu.

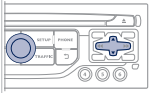


3



Select "**Activate / Deactivate AUX input**" and confirm.

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



!

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

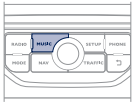
09 AUDIO SETTINGS

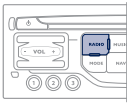
1





They are accessible by the **MUSIC** button in the control panel or by a long press on **RADIO** according to the source in use.





2

- "**Equalizer**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**")
- "**Le-Ri balance**" (Left/Right)
- "**Fr-Re balance**" (Front/Rear)
- "**Auto. Volume**" depending on road speed (Activate/Deactivate)

!

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.

!

The audio settings (**Equalizer**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.

The settings for distribution and balance are common to all sources.

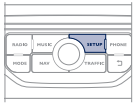
10 CONFIGURATION

DISPLAY CONFIGURATION

1



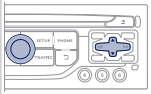
Press **SETUP** to display the "**Configuration**" menu.



2



Select "**Display configuration**" and confirm.

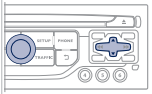


3a



Select "**Choose colour**" and confirm to select the screen colour harmony and the map presentation mode:

- day mode,
- night mode,
- automatic day/night mode, according to whether the headlamps are on.



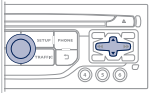
3b



Select "**Adjust luminosity**" and confirm to adjust the screen brightness.

Press "**OK**" to save the changes.

The settings for day and night are independent.



11 SCREEN MENU MAP

MAIN FUNCTION

- 1 OPTION A
  - 2 option A1
  - 2 option A2
    - 3 option A3
- 1 OPTION B...

"Navigation - guidance" MENU

1 Select destination

- 2 Enter an address
- 2 Directory
- 2 GPS coordinates (Archive)

1 Journey leg and route

- 2 Add a stage
  - 3 Enter an address
  - 3 Directory
  - 3 Previous destinations
- 2 Order/delete journey legs
- 2 Divert route
- 2 Chosen destination

1 Guidance options

- 2 Set speech synthesis
- 2 Delete last destinations
- 2 Set parameters for risk areas

1 Map management

- 2 Map orientation
- 2 Map details
- 2 Move the map
- 2 Mapping and updating
- 2 Description of risk areas database

1 Stop / Restore guidance

- 2 Define calculation criteria

- 2 Fastest route
- 2 Shortest route
- 2 Distance/Time
- 2 With tolls
- 2 With Ferry
- 2 Traffic info

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

"TRAFFIC" MENU

- 1 Geographic filter
  - 2 Retain all the messages
  - 2 Retain the messages
    - 3 Around the vehicle
    - 3 On the route
- 1 Select TMC station
  - 2 Automatic TMC
  - 2 Manual TMC
  - 2 List of TMC stations
- 1 Display / Do not display messages

Phone MENU

- 1 Dial
- 1 Directory of contacts
- 2 Call
- 2 Open
- 2 Import
- 2 Delete
- 2 Cancel
- 1 Contacts management
  - 2 New contact
  - 2 Sort by Name/First name
  - 2 Delete all contacts
  - 2 Import all the entries
  - 2 Synchronization options
    - 3 No synchronization
    - 3 Display telephone contacts
    - 3 Display SIM card contacts
    - 3 Display all phone contacts
  - 2 Contact mem. status
- 1 Phone functions
  - 2 Ring options
  - 2 Delete calls log
- 1 Bluetooth functions
  - 2 List of the paired peripherals
    - 3 Connect
    - 3 Disconnect
    - 3 Delete
    - 3 Delete all
    - 3 Cancel
  - 2 Peripherals search
  - 2 Rename radiotelephone
- 1 Hang up

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

"RADIO" MENU

- Change Waveband
- Guidance options
  - TA
  - RDS
- Audio settings
  - Equalizer
    - None
    - Classical
    - Jazz
    - Rock
    - Techno
    - Vocal
  - Bass
  - Treble
  - Loudness
  - Distribution
    - Driver
    - All passengers
  - Le-Ri balance
  - Fr-Re balance
  - Auto. Volume
- Update radio list

"MUSIC" MENU

- Change Media
  - CD
  - BT Streaming
  - USB/iPod
  - AUX
- Eject USB support
- Read mode
  - Normal
  - Random
  - Random on all media
  - Repetition
- Audio settings
- Activate / Deactivate AUX input

11 SCREEN MENU MAP

"SETUP" MENU

- **Display configuration**
  - **Choose colour**
    - **Harmony**
    - **Cartography**
      - Day mode
      - Night mode
      - Auto Day/Night
  - **Adjust luminosity**
  - **Set date and time**
  - **Select units**
- **Voice synthesis**
  - **Guidance instructions volume**
  - **Select male voice / Select female voice**
- **Define vehicle parameters***
  - **Parking assistance**
  - **Operation of wipers**
    - **Engage rear wiper in REVERSE**
  - **Lighting configuration**
    - **Duration of guide-me home lighting**
    - **Directional headlamps**
    - **Mood lighting**
    - **Daytime running lamps**
- **Trip computer**
  - **Alert log**
  - **Status of functions**

* The parameters vary according to the vehicle.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the guidance criteria on the Navigation Menu, "Guidance options"\ "Define calculation criteria".
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	The POIs have not been downloaded.
	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.	Download the POIs from the website: "http://peugeot.navigation.com".
The risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the Guidance options menu, "Navigation - guidance", "Set parameters for risk areas".
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Risk area alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Risk area located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. Le CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

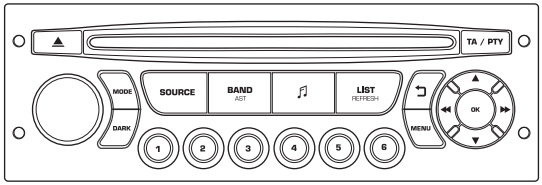
FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings for (Volume , Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "None", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).

400
400
500
400
400
500



Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5)

AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH®

Your Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

01	First steps	p.	318
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	319
03	Main menu	p.	320
04	Audio	p.	321
05	Peugeot Connect USB	p.	324
06	Bluetooth	p.	327
07	Screen menu map	p.	330
	Frequently asked questions	p.	335

01 FIRST STEPS

Select source:
radio, audio CD / MP3 CD, USB, Jack connection, Streaming, AUX.

Select wavebands FM1, FM2, FMast and AM.

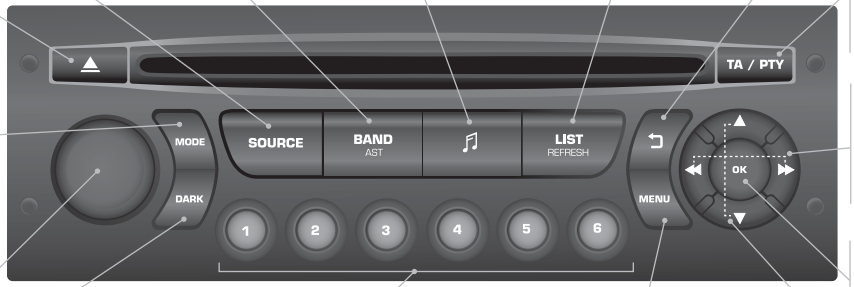
Audio settings: front/ rear fader, left/right balance, bass/treble, loudness, audio ambiences.

Display the list of local stations.
Long press: CD tracks or MP3 folders (CD / USB).

Abandon the current operation.

Eject CD.

TA (Traffic Announcements) on/off.
Long press: PTY* (radio Programme TYpe) mode.



Select the screen display mode:
Date, audio functions, trip computer, telephone.

Automatic frequency search down/up.
Select previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.

On/off, volume setting.

Confirm.

The DARK button changes the screen display for improved driving comfort at night.
1st press: upper bar only illuminated.
2nd press: black screen.
3rd press: return to standard display.

Buttons 1 to 6:
Select a pre-set radio station.
Long press: pre-set a station.

Display main menu.

Select next frequency down/up.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Select previous/next folder / genre / artist / playlist (USB).

* Available according to version.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

Radio: select the previous/next pre-set station.

USB: select genre / artist / folder from the classification list.

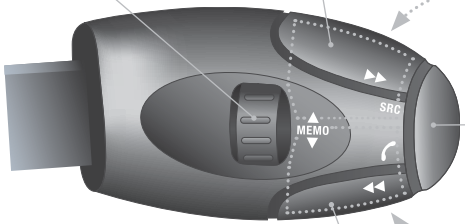
Select the previous/next item in a menu.

Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.

CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the next track.

CD / USB: continuous press: fast forwards play.

Move in the list.



Volume increase.

Change audio source.

Confirm a selection.

Call/end call on the telephone.

Press for more than 2 seconds: telephone main menu.

Volume decrease.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.

CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the previous track.

CD / USB: continuous press: fast reverse.

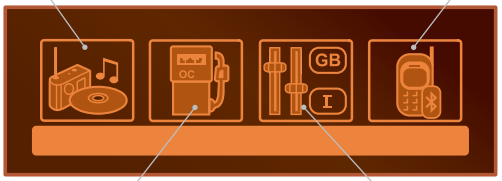
Move in the list.

03 MAIN MENU

AUDIO FUNCTIONS:
radio, CD, USB, options.

TELEPHONE:
Bluetooth hands-free, pairing, management of a call.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN C



TRIP COMPUTER: entering of distances, alerts, status of functions.

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION:
vehicle parameters, display, languages.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" in this section.

04 AUDIO

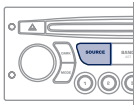
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

RADIO

SELECTING A STATION

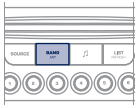
1 

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



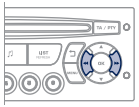
2 

Press the BAND AST button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



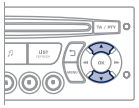
3 

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



4 

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

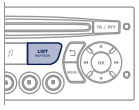






Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum).

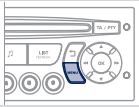
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



RDS

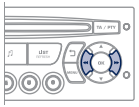
1 

Press the MENU button.



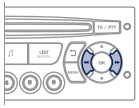
2 

Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



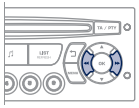
3 

Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



4 

Select ACTIVATE RDS then press OK. RDS appears on the screen.





In radio mode, press OK directly to activate / deactivate RDS mode.

!

The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. Under conditions of very weak reception, the system may change to a regional station.

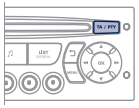
04 AUDIO

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

Press the TA button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.



CD
PLAYING A CD

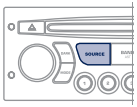
Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

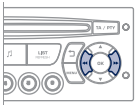
1 

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

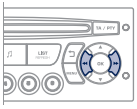
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or fast backwards.



04 AUDIO

MP3 CD
PLAYING AN MP3 COMPILATION

Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

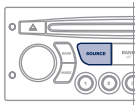
On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.

All of the files are displayed on a single level.

1 

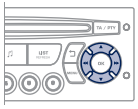
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

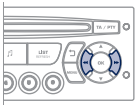
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



MP3 CD
INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

05 USB PLAYER

USING THE PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

The list of compatible equipment and the compression rates supported are available from PEUGEOT dealers.

1

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket*. The audio files are transmitted from a portable device - digital player or a USB memory stick - to your Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) and heard via the vehicle's speakers.



2

USB memory stick (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0) or Apple® player of generation 5 or later:

- USB memory sticks should be formatted FAT or FAT 32 (NTFS not supported),
- the Apple® player lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is also possible by means of the steering mounted controls.



3

Other Apple® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable device.



CONNECTING A USB MEMORY STICK

1



Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

The file formats supported are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only), .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression), .wav and .ogg.

Certain playlist formats are supported (.m3u, ...)

On reconnection of the previous memory stick used, play is resumed automatically with the last track played.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB device.

The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

* According to vehicle.

05 USB PLAYER

USING THE PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

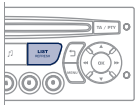
2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.

Select by Folder / Artist / Genre / Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.



- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



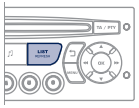




Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.

Navigate through the list using the left/ right and up/down buttons.

Confirm the selection by pressing OK.

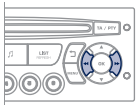


3



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next track on the classification list currently being played.

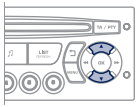
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



4



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



CONNECTING AN APPLE® PLAYER VIA THE USB PORT

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined in the Apple® player).

Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 4 above.

!

Do not connect a hard disk or USB connection device other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

05 USB PLAYER

USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX)

JACK socket or USB port (according to vehicle)

The auxiliary input, JACK or USB, allows the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).

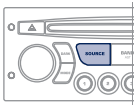
! Do not connect a device to both the JACK socket and the USB port at the same time.

1 Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the JACK socket or to the USB port, using a suitable cable (not supplied).



2 

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



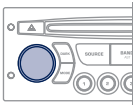
ADJUSTING THE VOLUME OF THE AUXILIARY SOURCE

1 First adjust the volume of your portable device.



2 

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



The display and control is via the portable device.



06 BLUETOOTH

BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

SCREEN C
(Available according to model and version)

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.

Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

PAIRING A TELEPHONE / FIRST CONNECTION

! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

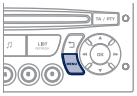
Go to www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration.



2 

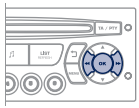
Press the MENU button.



3 

In the menu, select:

- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio
- Bluetooth configuration
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4 A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.

5 The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

! The TELEPHONE menu permits access to the following functions in particular: Directory*, Call list, Pairing management.

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6 Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7 A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.

Confirm by pressing OK.



8 A message is displayed in the screen of the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with OK.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.



9 A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.

i The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured.

The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

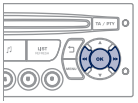
06 BLUETOOTH

RECEIVING A CALL

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the vehicle's screen.

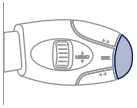
2 

Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.





Press this button to accept the call.



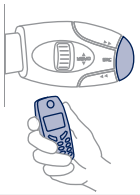
MAKING A CALL

1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then Call, Call list or Directory.

2 Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate with the thumb wheel.

Or

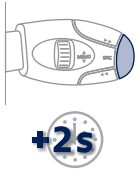
To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.



ENDING A CALL

1 During a call, press this button for more than 2 seconds.

Confirm with OK to end the call.



BLUETOOTH AUDIO STREAMING*

!

Wireless transmission of the telephone's music files via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

1

Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. See steps 1 to 9 on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.



2

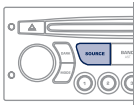
Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu.

The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

3



Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button**.
The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls***.
The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.



* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

** In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

*** If the telephone supports the function.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP



MONOCHROME A

MAIN FUNCTION

- OPTION A
  - OPTION A1
  - OPTION A2
- OPTION B...

RADIO-CD

- RDS SEARCH
- REG MODE
- CD REPEAT
- RANDOM PLAY

VEHICLE CONFIG*

- REV WIPE ACT
- GUIDE LAMPS

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

OPTIONS

- DIAGNOSTICS
  - CONSULT
  - ABANDON

07 SCREEN MENU MAP



UNITS

- TEMPERATURE: °CELSIUS / °FAHRENHEIT
- FUEL CONSUMPTION: KM/L - L/100 - MPG

DISPLAY ADJUST

- YEAR
- MONTH
- DATE
- HOUR
- MINUTES
- 12 H/24 H MODE

LANGUAGE

- FRANCAIS
- ITALIANO
- NEDERLANDS
- PORTUGUES
- PORTUGUES-BRASIL
- DEUTSCH
- ENGLISH
- ESPANOL

07 SCREEN MENU MAP



MONOCHROME C

Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:



RADIO

1 activate / deactivate RDS

1 activate / deactivate REG mode

1 activate / deactivate radiotext

CD / MP3 CD

1 activate / deactivate Intro

1 activate / deactivate track repeat (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

1 activate / deactivate random play (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

USB

1 activate / deactivate track repeat (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

1 activate / deactivate random play (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

MONOCHROME C

Pressing the MENU button displays:

AUDIO FUNCTIONS

- **FM BAND PREFERENCES**
  - **alternative frequencies (RDS)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **regional mode (REG)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **radio-text information (RDTXT)**
    - activate / deactivate
- **PLAY MODES**
  - **album repeat (RPT)**
    - activate / deactivate
  - **track random play (RDM)**
    - activate / deactivate

TRIP COMPUTER

- **ENTER DISTANCE TO DESTINATION**
  - **Distance: x miles**
- **ALERT LOG**
  - **Diagnostics**
- **STATUS OF THE FUNCTIONS***
  - **Functions activated or deactivated**

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION

- **DEFINE THE VEHICLE PARAMETERS***
- **DISPLAY CONFIGURATION**
  - **video brightness adjustment**
    - normal video
    - inverse video
    - brightness (- +) adjustment
  - **date and time adjustment**
    - day/month/year adjustment
    - hour/minute adjustment
    - choice of 12 h / 24 h mode
  - **choice of units**
    - l/100 km - mpg - km/l
    - °Celsius / °Fahrenheit
- **CHOICE OF LANGUAGE**

BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

- **BLUETOOTH CONFIGURATION**
  - **Connect/Disconnect a device**
  - **Telephone function**
  - **Audio Streaming function**
    - Consult the paired device
    - Delete a paired device
    - Perform a Bluetooth search
- **CALL**
  - **Calls list**
    - Directory
- **MANAGE THE TELEPHONE CALL**
  - **Terminate the current call**
  - **Activate private mode**

* The parameters vary according to vehicle

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen. The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

A

Accessories 206
Accessory socket, 12V 99, 101, 108
Adjusting headlamps 91
Adjusting head restraints 65
Adjusting seat belt height 130
Adjusting the steering wheel....71
Airbags 36, 113
Airbags, curtain....135, 136
Airbags, front 133, 136
Airbags, lateral....135, 136
Air conditioning....25
Air conditioning, digital....57, 60
Air conditioning, manual 57, 58
Air filter 173
Air flow....25
Air vents....56
Alarm 77
Anti-pinch....79, 105
Anti-theft 74
Armrest....99
Armrest, front....101
Armrest, rear....104
ASR 32
Assistance call....216
Audible warning....124
Audio/video sockets....246
Audio streaming (Bluetooth)....302, 329
Audio systems 51
Automatic illumination of headlamps 87, 90
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps 124
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 93, 95
Auxiliary socket....303, 326
Auxiliary sockets....246, 324

B

Backup starting....199
Battery 173, 198-200
Battery, charging....199
Battery, remote control 75, 76
Blind for panoramic sunroof....105
Blinds.... 111
Bluetooth (hands-free) 247-249, 286, 327
Bluetooth (telephone) 247-249, 286
Bonnet 167
Bonnet stay....167
Boot floor, adjustable 110
Boot lamp 98, 111
Boot lid....84
Brake discs 174
Brake lamps....189
Brake pads 174
Brakes 174

C

Capacity, fuel tank 85
CD MP3....323
Central locking....73, 82
Changing a bulb 186, 189, 190
Changing a fuse 191
Changing a wheel....181, 183
Changing a wiper blade....95, 202
Changing the date 42, 44, 46
Changing the remote control battery....75
Changing the time 42, 44, 46
Checking levels 171, 172
Checking the engine oil level....40
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit)....175
Checks.... 169, 170, 173, 174
Child lock....123
Children 118, 121, 122
Child seats 112, 113, 119
Child seats, conventional 116, 118
Closing the boot....73, 83, 84
Closing the doors....73, 81
Cold climate screen 205
Colour screen, retractable 49, 51
Connectors, audio 100, 101, 324, 326
Control for panoramic sunroof blind 105
Coolant level....37, 172
Coolant temperature indicator 37
Courtesy lamps....96
Courtesy mirror....100
Cruise control 151
Cup holder....99

D

Date (setting)....42, 44, 46
Daytime running lamps.... 89, 186, 188
Deactivating the passenger airbag....133
Deadlocking....73
Defrosting 58, 59, 69
Demisting....58
Dials and gauges....27
Diesel additive level....172
Dimensions....212
Dipped beam 87, 186, 187
Dipstick....40, 171
Directional lighting 92
Direction indicators 124, 186, 189
Distance alert....147
Doors....81
Doors emergency control 83
Door trays....99
Dynamic emergency braking....140
Dynamic stability control (DSC).... 32, 35, 127

E

Eco-driving 25
Eco-driving (advice).....25
Economical driving 25
Economy mode.....201
Electric window controls 79
Electronic engine immobiliser....74, 76
Electronic stability control (ESC)....126
Emergency call.....216, 217
Emergency warning lamps 124
Energy economy mode.....201
Engine,
Diesel.....86, 168, 170, 209-211
Engine, petrol 86, 169, 207, 208
Engine compartment 169, 170
Engine compartment fusebox.....191
Engine oil level indicator.....40, 171
Engines.....207, 209
Environment 25, 76
ESC/ASR.....126

F

Filling with fuel 85, 86
Fitting a wheel 184
Fitting roof bars.....205
Fittings, boot 106
Flashing indicators.....124
Floor, three-position.....110
Foglamps, rear 88
Folding the rear seats.....67
Front foglamps..... 88, 186, 188
Front seats.....63, 64, 66
Fuel.....25, 85, 86
Fuel consumption 25
Fuel filler cap 85
Fuel filler flap 85, 86
Fuel gauge.....85
Fuel tank.....85, 86
Fusebox, dashboard.....191
Fuses.....191

G

G.P.S. 230, 272
Gearbox, automatic ... 158, 174, 200
Gearbox, electronic
gear control..... 154, 161, 174, 200
Gearbox, manual..... 153, 161, 174
Gear lever.....25
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 158
Gear lever, electronic gear control
gearbox.....154
Gear lever, manual gearbox 153
Gear shift indicator 153
Glove box 100
Grab handle on console 99
Grab handles.....99
Grip control.....128
Guidance 230, 270, 277
Guide-me-home.....90

H

Halogen headlamps.....186
Hands-free kit 286, 327
Hazard warning lamps.....124
Head-up display..... 145, 149, 151
Headlamp adjustment.....91
Headlamps, directional 92, 186
Headlamp wash.....94
Headlamp wash reservoir.....172
Head restraints, front.....65
Head restraints, rear.....67
Heated seats 65
Heating 25, 58
Height and reach adjustment,
steering wheel 71
Hill start assist 142
Hooks 108
Horn.....124

I

Identification plates.....213
Indicator lamps, status.....31
Indicators, direction 124
Inflating accessories
(using the kit).....175
Inflating tyres 25
Inputs for audio
system 246, 303, 324, 326
Instrument panel lighting 41
Instrument panels.....27, 28
Instrument panel screen.....27, 153
Instruments and controls 9
Interior fittings.....99
Interior mood lighting.....97
ISOFIX.....121
ISOFIX child seats..... 120-122
ISOFIX mountings 120

J

Jack 181, 183
JACK socket..... 101, 303, 324, 326
Jukebox (copy) 244
Jukebox (playing) 245

K

Keeping children safe..... 112, 113,
121, 122, 133
Key with remote control.... 72-74, 76

L

Labels, identification 213
Lamps, warning and indicator 29, 32, 33
LED daytime running lamps 89
Level, brake fluid 171
Level, headlamp wash....94, 172
Level, power steering fluid....171
Levels and checks 169-172
Lighting 98
Lighting, guide-me home 89, 90
Lighting, interior 96, 97
Lighting bulbs (replacement) 186, 189, 190
Lighting control stalk....87
Lighting dimmer....41
Loading....25, 205
Load reduction mode....201
Load space cover 107
Locating your vehicle....73
Locking from the inside....82
Long objects, transporting 66, 104
Luggage retaining net....108
Luggage retaining strap....106

M

Main beam.... 87, 186-188
Maintenance....25
Map reading lamps....96
Markings, identification....213
Mat....102
Menu, main....320
Mini fuel level....85
Mirror, rear view....70
Mirrors, door 69
Misfuel prevention 86
Motorway function (direction indicators) 124
Mountings for ISOFIX seats 120
MP3 CD 323
Multimedia, rear....103
Music media players....242, 298

N

Navigation.... 230, 269, 270
Number plate lamps 190

O

Oil filter 173
Oil level....40, 171
Opening the bonnet....167
Opening the boot....72, 83
Opening the doors....72, 81
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind 105
Opening the retractable screen 51
Opening the tailgate 83, 84
Operation indicator lamps 29, 31, 32

P

Paint colour code....213
Panoramic glass sunroof....105
Parking brake 174
Parking brake, electric....137, 140
Parking sensors, rear 164
Particle emission filter....172, 173
Passenger compartment filter....173
PEUGEOT call button....217
PEUGEOT CONNECT ASSISTANCE 216
Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) 219, 222, 225, 252
Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6)....49, 263
PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS 216, 217
Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) 46, 317, 330, 332
PEUGEOT services....217
PIN code....250
Player, CD MP3....323
POIs (updating) 237
Port, USB.... 101, 303, 324, 326
Priming the fuel system 168
Protecting children.... 112, 113, 118, 120-122, 133
Puncture 175

R

Radio 241, 295, 296, 321
RCA sockets....246
Reading lamps, rear 96
Rear foglamp....189, 190
Rear screen (demisting) 59, 69
Recharging the battery 199
Reduction of electrical load 201
Regeneration of the particle emissions filter....173
Reinitialising the electric windows....79
Reinitialising the remote control....75
Remote control 72, 73, 76
Removable screen (snow shield) 205
Removing a wheel....184
Removing the mat 102
Repair kit, puncture 175
Replacing bulbs 186, 189, 190
Replacing fuses....191
Replacing the air filter....173
Replacing the oil filter 173
Replacing the passenger compartment filter....173

Replacing wiper blades 95, 202
Resetting the service indicator 39
Resetting the trip recorder 41
Rev counter 27
Reversing lamp.....189
Risk areas (update) 237, 274
Roof bars 205
Routine checks 173, 174
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 168

S

Safety for children.....79, 118, 123
Screen, colour 16/9 .....225, 252
Screen,
colour and mapping 267, 306
Screen, monochrome 320, 330, 332
Screen, monochrome C.....53
Screen, multifunction (with audio equipment)..... 44, 46, 49, 51
Screen, multifunction (without audio equipment) 42
Screen-wash reservoir.....172
Screen
menu map..... 252, 306, 330, 332
Screenwash, front.....94
Screenwash fluid level.....94, 172
Seat adjustment.....63, 64
Seat belts..... 130-132
Seats, electric 64
Seats, rear 67
Serial number, vehicle 213
Service indicator 38
Servicing.....25
Setting the clock 42, 44, 46
Short-cut menus 226, 268
Sidelamps..... 87, 89, 186-189
Side repeater 188
SIM card 100, 250
Ski flap.....104
Spare wheel.....181, 183
Speed limiter.....149
Speedometer 27
Spotlamps, side 97
Start 199
Starting the vehicle 74, 154, 158
Steering mounted controls, audio 224, 319
Stopping the vehicle 74, 154, 158
Stop & Start 55, 59, 61, 85, 161, 167, 173, 198
Storage 99, 101, 104, 106
Storage box 100
Storage wells 106
Stowing rings 106
Sun visor..... 100, 111
Synchronising the remote control.....75
Synthesiser, voice.....280
System, ASR 128
System, navigation 230, 270

T

Table of weights.....208, 210, 211
Tables of engines.....207, 209
Tables of fuses.....191
Tank, fuel 86
Technical data.....207-211
Telephone.... 217, 247-249, 286, 290
Telephone, hands-free..... 247-249
Temperature, coolant.....37
Temperature control for heated seats 65
Temporary tyre repair kit.....175
Third brake lamp.....190
TMC (Traffic info).....239, 283
Tools 181, 183
Torch..... 98, 111
Total distance recorder 41
Towbar 204
Towed loads.....208, 210, 211
Towing another vehicle 202
Traction control (ASR) 35, 128
Traffic information (TA)..... 240, 284, 297, 322
Traffic information (TMC) 239, 240, 283, 284
Trailer 204
Trip computer 52, 53, 55
Trip distance recorder.....41
Tyre pressures.....213
Tyres.....25
Tyre under-inflation detection 125

U

Under-inflation (detection) 125
Under floor storage.....109
Unlocking.....72
Unlocking from the inside 82
Update risk areas 237, 274
Updating POIs 237
USB (Peugeot Connect).....101, 324

V

Vehicle identification 213
Ventilation 56-58
Voice commands 222

W

Warning lamps.....31, 33, 34
Wash-wipe, rear 94
Weights.....208, 210, 211
Welcome lighting 89, 97
Window controls 79
Wiper, rear.....94
Wiper control stalk..... 93-95
Wipers 93, 95

X

Xenon headlamps.....186

EXTERIOR

Remote control key....72-76
- opening / closing
- anti-theft protection
- starting
- battery

Wiper....93-95
Changing a wiper blade....95, 202

Boot, tailgate....83-84
- opening / closing
- emergency release

Temporary puncture repair kit....175-180
Changing a wheel....181-185
- tools
- removing

Parking sensors....164-165
Towbar....204
Towing....202-203

Changing bulbs....189-190
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps
- foglamps

Fuel tank....85-86
Misfuel prevention....86

Accessories....206
Roof bars....205
Panoramic sunroof....105

Door mirrors....69

Exterior welcome lighting....89
Door mirror spotlamps....97
Lighting, automatic, directional....87-90, 92
Headlamp height adjustment....91
Changing front bulbs....186-188
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Very cold climate screen....205

Doors....81-83
- opening / closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Alarm....77-78
Electric windows....79-80

ESC, ABS, EBFD, EBA, ASR, CDS....126-127
Grip control....128-129
Tyre under-inflation detection....125
Tyre pressures....213





Rear seats 67-68



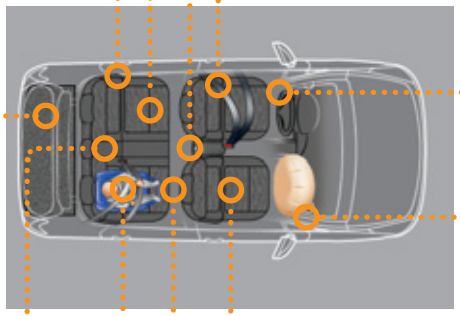
Rear multimedia 103

Side blinds 111

Seat belts..... 130-132

Adjustable boot floor..... 110
Boot fittings..... 106-109
- rear parcel shelf
- hooks
- 12 V accessories socket
- luggage retaining net
- storage box

Boot lamp 98
Torch..... 98, 111



Mats..... 102

Airbags 133-136
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag..... 112-115, 134

Rear armrest..... 104
Ski flap..... 104

Front seats..... 63-65
- manual
- electric
- head restraints
- lumbar
- heated

Seat in table position, transporting long objects..... 66

Conventional child seats..... 112-119
ISOFIX child seats..... 120-122
Child lock..... 123

Storage compartments under the footwells..... 104

Courtesy lamps 96, 97
Seat belt / passenger's front airbag warning lamps display 131, 134
Rear view mirror 70

Sun visor 100

Dashboard fuses 191-194

Opening the bonnet 167

6-speed manual gearbox 153
Electronic gear control gearbox 154-157
Automatic gearbox 158-160
Stop & Start 161-163
Hill start assist 142
Eco-driving 25-26

Electric parking brake 137-141, 143-144

Front armrest 101
Peugeot Connect USB 101, 242, 298, 324

Peugeot Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) ... 219-261
Setting the date/time ... 49-50

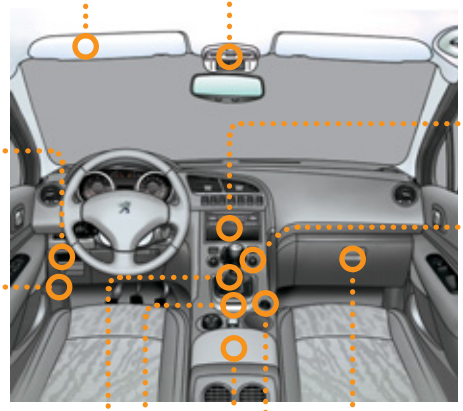
Peugeot Connect Navigation (RT6) ... 263-315
Setting the date/time ... 49-50

Peugeot Connect Sound (RD5) 317-336
Setting the date/time ... 46-48

Ventilation 56-57
Manual air conditioning 58-59
Digital air conditioning 60-62

Interior fittings 99-101, 102
- glove box
- driver's storage compartments
- mat

12 V accessory socket 101



INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS (CONT.)

Instrument panels, screens 27-29
Warning lamps.....29-37
Indicators.....37-40
Gear shift indicator 153
Buttons 39, 41
- service indicator / trip distance recorder
- dashboard lighting dimmer

Multifunction screens.....42-53
- Screen A
- Screen C
- 16/9 colour screen

Retractable screen 51
Screen A (setting the date/time) 43, 45

Head-up display.....145-146
Distance alert.....147-148

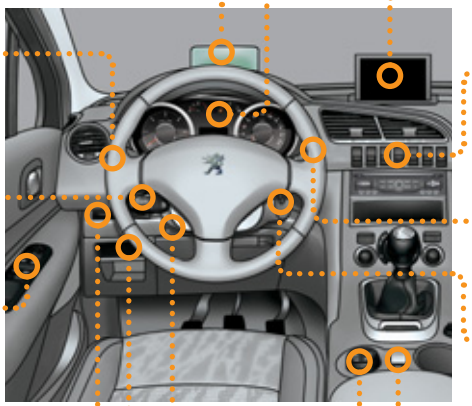
Lighting controls 87-90
Direction indicators.....124

Speed limiter.....149-150
Cruise control 151-152

Door mirrors.....69
Electric windows, deactivating...79-80

Switch panel 16
Stop & Start 161-163

Headlamp height adjustment.....91



Hazard warning lamps.....124
Head-up display.....145-146
Distance alert.....147-148

Wiper controls.....93-95
Trip computer 52-55

Ignition switch 74

Panoramic sunroof 105

Grip control 128-129

Steering wheel adjustment 71
Horn.....124

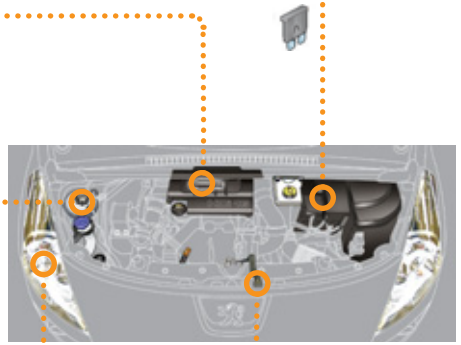
Running out of fuel, Diesel 168

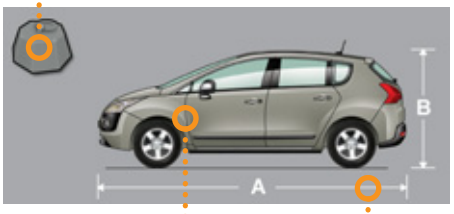
12 V battery 198-200
Load reduction, economy mode ... 201
Engine compartment
fuses 191, 195-197

Petrol weights 208
Diesel weights 210
Diesel LCV weights 211

Checking levels 171-172
- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid

Checking components 173-174
- air filter
- passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- brake pads / discs





Changing bulbs..... 186-190
- front
- rear

Identification markings..... 213

Dimensions..... 212

Opening the bonnet..... 167
Under the bonnet, petrol..... 169
Under the bonnet, Diesel..... 170
Petrol engines..... 207
Diesel engines..... 209





This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of this equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update the current handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this handbook is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Printed in the EU

Anglais

07-12

PEUGEOT

Automobiles PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 PARIS
Tél. 33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax 33 (0)1 40 66 54 14
Adresse postale : Automobiles PEUGEOT B.P 01 75761 PARIS cedex 16 - Adresse Internet : http://www.peugeot.com
Société Anonyme au capital de 172 711 770 Euros - R.C.S. PARIS B 552 144 503. SIRET 552 144 503 00018. APE 341 Z



www.peugeot.com

Anglais
AN. 13388.0040

Service overdue

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates -180 miles (-300 km).

A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.

The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the type of driving.
Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the time interval since the last service, indicated in **the servicing and warranty booklet**.